

Lee waves in IDEMIX:
the effect and sensitivity of
implementing a lee wave module
in an internal wave model

Dissertation with the aim of achieving a doctoral degree
at the Faculty of Mathematics, Informatics and Natural
Sciences

Department of Earth Sciences
at Universität Hamburg

Submitted by
Thomas Søndergaard Eriksen

Hamburg, 2021

Department of Earth Sciences

Date of Oral Defense:

15.12.2021

Reviewers:

Prof. Dr. Carsten Eden

Prof. Dr. Dirk Olbers

Members of the examination commission:

Chair Prof. Dr. Carsten Eden

Prof. Dr. Dirk Olbers

Prof. Dr. Nedjeljka Žagar

Pd Dr. Thomas Pohlmann

Prof. Dr. Armin Iske

Chair of the Subject Doctoral Committee Earth System Sciences:

Prof. Dr. Dirk Gajewski

Dean of Faculty MIN:

Prof. Dr. Heinrich Graener

Versicherung an Eides statt | Declaration on Oath

Hiermit erkläre ich an Eides statt, dass ich die vorliegende Dissertationsschrift selbst verfasst und keine anderen als die angegebenen Quellen und Hilfsmittel benutzt habe |

I hereby declare upon oath that I have written the present dissertation independently and have not use further resources and aids than those stated

Hamburg, den

16/02-2022

Unterschrift

Thomas Eriksen

Zusammenfassung

Interne Schwerewellen bilden einen Schlüsselfaktor der Ozeanzirkulation, da ihre Brechung Impulse und Energie großskaliger Bewegungen auf kleinskalige Turbulenzen überträgt. Die internen Schwerewellen bilden so eine Hauptquelle für die Vermischung des inneren Ozeans und wirken umgekehrt auch selbst als Antrieb großskaliger Bewegungen wie etwa der meridionalen Umwälzzirkulation selbst. Hieraus resultiert ihre wesentliche Bedeutung im Klimasystem sowie weiter die Notwendigkeit ihrer Abbildung in Klimamodellen. Den größten Beitrag zur internen Wellenenergie im Innenozean leisten die barotropen Gezeiten, die durch Gezeitenströmungen am Meeresboden erzeugt werden, sowie außerdem die niederfrequenten Schwerewellen, die an der Oberfläche aufgrund von Windspannungsschwankungen entstehen. Eine andere Gattung interner Wellen, sind Leewellen, die in jüngerer Vergangenheit eine erhebliche Aufmerksamkeit erfahren haben. Leewellen werden durch geostrophische Strömungen über rauer Topographie am Meeresboden ausgelöst. Während interne Gezeiten und Trägheitswellen bereits in vielen Ozeanmodellen als Grenztrieb verwendet werden, bilden moderne Ozeanmodellen den Leewellenantrieb nicht ab, obwohl angenommen wird, dass er erhebliche Energiemengen für die Durchmischung in Schlüsselregionen des Ozeans liefert.

Die mit der internen Schwerewellenbrechung verbundene vertikale Vermischung findet jedoch auf zu kleinen Skalen statt, um in Ozeanmodellen aufgeschlüsselt zu werden und muss daher parametrisiert werden. Das interne Wellenmodell IDEMIX (Internal Waves, Dissipation, Energy and MIXing) beschreibt die Erzeugung, Ausbreitung und anschließende Brechung interner Schwerewellen basierend auf der Erhaltung der Wellenwirkung. Es berechnet damit direkt Diffusivität und Dissipationsraten der turbulenten kinetischen Energie (TKE) aus der internen Schwerewellenenergetik unter Berücksichtigung aller Energiequellen und -senken des Prozesses. Das Modell eignet sich so ideal als Bestandteil von Ozeanmodellen, die nach Energiekonsistenz streben. Diese Doktorarbeit zielt auf eine Beschreibung der Implementierung, Auswirkungen und Empfindlichkeit einer Leewellenkomponente in IDEMIX ab. Das Leewellenfeld ist in IDEMIX als ein eigenes Energieabteil implementiert, gekoppelt an das "hintergründige" interne Wellenfeld und den mittleren Fluss über Energieübertragung. Der Vergleich der Ergebnisse eines nicht-wirbelauflösenden Modells mit denen eines wirbelauflösenden Modells zeigt eine große Empfindlichkeit der Lee-Wellenerzeugung gegenüber der Modellauflösung.

Eine Erhöhung des Leewellenenergieflusses am Boden um einen Faktor von 25 resultiert/korreliert in einer Zunahme der horizontalen Modellauflösung von 2° auf $1/10^\circ$. Dies resultiert (Grund hierfür o.ä.) in großen Teilen aus erhöhten Meeresbodengeschwindigkeiten und somit auf einem Leewellenenergiefluss in Regionen, welche mit dem aufgelösten Wirbelfeld verbunden sind.

In hochauflösenden Modellen ist das Leewellenfeld in der Lage, Impulse aus der mittleren Strömung zu extrahieren, was zu Geschwindigkeitsabnahmen von bis zu $0,1\text{ m/s}$ in Bodennähe führt, von denen einige über einen Großteil der Wassersäule anhalten können. Darüber hinaus können die Leewellen durch die Erhöhung der internen Hintergrundwellenenergie um bis zu einem Faktor von fünf in einigen Regionen die Diffusivität um eine ganze Größenordnung erhöhen. Obwohl der Großteil der Leewellenenergie unterhalb von 3000 m Tiefe liegt, treten solche großen Diffusivitätszunahmen hauptsächlich im Inneren und nicht in Bodennähe auf.

Obwohl die Leewellen einen signifikanten Einfluss auf die mittlere Strömung und Diffusivität haben, zeigen Sensitivitätsexperimente, dass die Leewellenerzeugung sowohl von Vereinfachungen in der Darstellung der Topographie als auch von kritischen Begrenzerfunktion im Leewellenmodul weitgehend unbeeinflusst ist. Eine Ausnahme davon bildet die Bodenspannung, aber hier werden die Unterschiede zwischen den Experimenten gemildert, wenn die vertikale Dimension der Spannung berücksichtigt wird. Während Variationen dieser sogenannten Topographieparameter das Leewellenfeld nicht wesentlich beeinflussen, ist es sehr empfindlich gegenüber Variationen in den IDEMIX-Schlüsselparametern, die den Energietransfer vom Leewellenfeld zum internen Hintergrundwellenfeld bestimmen. Ein starker Anstieg der vertikal integrierten Leewellenenergie aufgrund von Änderungen der IDEMIX-Parameter führt auch zu einem starken Anstieg der durch die Leewellen verursachten vertikal integrierten Spannung.

Darüber hinaus beeinflussen Wechselwirkungen zwischen Leewellen und mittlerer Strömung im Südlichen Ozean das vertikale Profil der Leewellenenergie, was die Behauptungen früherer Studien untermauert, dass Schwerenwelle-mittlerer Strömungswechselwirkungen ein Grund für die Diskrepanzen zwischen vorhergesagter und beobachteter Durchmischung im Südlichen Ozean sein können. Die von IDEMIX modellierten Dissipationsraten von TKE im Südlichen Ozean stimmen mit den Schätzungen aus Beobachtungen überein.

Abstract

Internal gravity waves are a key component in ocean circulation, because of their ability to transfer momentum and energy from large scale motions to small scale turbulence via their breaking. As such, they constitute a major source of interior ocean mixing, and thus in turn act as a driver of large scale motions, such as the meridional overturning circulation, themselves. They are therefore of great importance in the climate system, and hence is also their representation in climate models. The largest contributors of internal wave energy in the interior ocean are the internal tides generated by tidal flow at the bottom, and inertial waves generated at the surface due to wind stress fluctuations, but another class of internal waves, which has received substantial attention in recent years, are lee waves. These are formed by geostrophic currents over rough topography at the bottom. While internal tides and inertial waves are used as boundary forcing in many ocean models, lee wave forcing is not included in even state of the art ocean models, despite being hypothesized to provide significant amounts energy for mixing in key regions.

This mixing associated with internal gravity wave breaking takes place on scales to small to be resolved in ocean models, though, and it must therefore be parameterized. The internal wave model IDEMIX (Internal waves, Dissipation, Energy and MIXing) describes the generation, propagation and subsequent breaking of internal gravity waves based on the conservation of wave action, and thereby calculates diffusivity and dissipation rates of turbulent kinetic energy (TKE) directly from internal wave energetics, accounting for all energy sources and sinks in the process. This makes the model an ideal component ocean models striving for energy consistency.

In this PhD thesis, I aim to describe the implementation, effects, and sensitivity of a lee wave component in IDEMIX. The lee wave field is implemented as an energy compartment in its own within the framework of IDEMIX, coupled to the "background" internal wave field and the mean flow via energy transfer terms. Comparing results from a non-eddy resolving model with those from an eddy-resolving one reveal a large sensitivity of lee wave generation to model resolution. An increase in lee wave energy flux at the bottom by a factor of 25 is found with an increase in the horizontal model resolution from 2° to $1/10^\circ$. This is in large part due to increased bottom speeds and thus lee wave energy flux in regions associated with the resolved eddy field.

In high-resolution models the lee wave field is able to extract momentum from the mean flow resulting in velocity decreases of up to 0.1 m/s near the bottom, some of which can persist throughout much of the water column. Furthermore, by in-

creasing the background internal wave energy by up to a factor of five in some regions, the lee waves are able to increase the diffusivity by an entire order of magnitude. Even though the bulk of the lee wave energy is situated below 3000m depth, such large diffusivity increases occur mainly in the interior and not near the bottom.

Despite the lee waves having a significant impact on the mean flow and diffusivity, sensitivity experiments indicate, that lee wave generation is largely unaffected by both simplifications in the representation of topography and by the critical limiter function in the lee wave module. An exception to this is the bottom stress, but differences across experiments here are alleviated if the vertical dimension of the stress is taken into account. While variations in these so-called topography parameters do not significantly affect the lee wave field, it is highly sensitive to variations in key IDEMIX parameters determining the energy transfer from the lee wave field to the background internal wave field. A large increase in the vertically integrated lee wave energy due to changes in the IDEMIX parameters, also results in large increases in the vertically integrated stress caused by the lee waves.

Additionally, lee wave-mean flow interactions in the Southern Ocean affects the vertical profile of lee wave energy, substantiating claims by previous studies that wave-mean flow interactions can be a reason for the discrepancies between predicted and observed mixing in the Southern Ocean. Dissipation rates of TKE in the Southern Ocean modelled by IDEMIX are in accordance with observational estimates.

Contents

Zusammenfassung	iii
Abstract	v
1 Introduction	1
1.1 Overturning circulation	1
1.2 Internal gravity waves	3
1.2.1 Generation of internal gravity waves	4
1.2.2 Lee waves	5
1.2.3 Energy transfer and dissipation	8
1.3 Ocean Mixing	9
1.3.1 Observations of ocean mixing	11
1.4 Ocean mixing in models and IDEMIX	12
1.4.1 Energy consistency and pyOM	14
1.5 Outline	16
2 Developing a lee wave module in the internal wave model IDEMIX	17
2.1 A simple lee wave energy flux	17
2.2 Generalizing the basic example	20
2.3 Formulating an energy equation for lee waves	22
2.4 Spectral shape, exchange parameter and vertical group velocity	23
2.5 Finalizing the energy equation	26
2.6 Pseudo-momentum fluxes and the effect on the mean flow	27
2.7 Coupling to the internal wave compartment	28
2.8 Bottom boundary conditions and anisotropic spectrum	29
3 Research Questions	31
3.1 Models and experimental setups	33
4 Sensitivity to model resolution	37
4.1 Comparison of two global models	37
4.1.1 Conclusion on the comparison of coarse and high resolution models	41
4.2 Comparison of an eddy-resolving and an eddy-permitting regional model	42

CONTENTS

4.3	Final conclusions on the resolution sensitivity	44
5	Results from parameter sensitivity analysis in the regional FLAME model	47
5.1	Description of base experiment	47
5.1.1	Bottom lee wave energy flux, bottom flow, and bottom stress . .	48
5.1.2	The three dimensional lee wave field	51
5.1.3	Zonally averaged quantities	55
5.1.4	Energy transfers	59
5.1.5	Summary of description of the base experiment	62
5.2	Effect of a lee wave module - difference from control run	63
5.2.1	Linking the lee wave energy field with the diffusivity	63
5.2.2	Differences in zonally averaged quantities	66
5.2.3	Effects on the mean flow	70
5.2.4	Intermediate conclusions on the differences between the base experiment and the control run	72
5.3	Sensitivity to lee wave parameters	73
5.3.1	Sensitivity of the energy flux	74
5.3.2	Sensitivity of the bottom stress	75
5.3.3	Intermediate conclusions on the topography sensitivity	79
5.4	Sensitivity to IDEMIX parameters	80
5.5	Comparison with ARGO-derived data	87
5.6	Overview of and conclusions on the parameter sensitivity analysis . . .	90
6	Regional focus on the Southern Ocean	96
7	Discussion and outlook	104
7.1	Eddies and resolution	105
7.2	Bottom stress	107
7.3	Diffusivity	108
7.4	Outlook	110
8	Final Conclusions	112
A	Additional results from topography sensitivity experiments	115

1 Chapter 1

2 Introduction

3 The purpose of this section is to familiarize the reader with both the theoretical con-
4 cepts and the background knowledge, which is important to set the research carried
5 out into perspective. It will focus on why the study of lee waves is important, what
6 the current state of knowledge is, and what further research should elucidate. Upon
7 reading this section, it should therefore be clear why the field of lee waves remains
8 an important research topic, but also why we already know they play a role in the
9 world oceans.

10 1.1 Overturning circulation

11 The meridional overturning circulation is an important component of the large scale
12 ocean circulation. Energy exchange between the ocean and the atmosphere, and the
13 ability of the ocean to ventilate itself are the primary ways in which the ocean affects
14 global climate. In the Atlantic Ocean the northward heat transport reaches $1.2PW$
15 ($1PW = 10^{15}W$) at $25^\circ N$ (Hall and Bryden, 1982). This heat contributes substan-
16 tially in shaping the climate of northern and western Europe through interaction
17 with the lower atmosphere (Toggweiler and Key, 2003). North Atlantic Deep Wa-
18 ter (NADW) is formed at specific locations in the Northern Atlantic and Labrador
19 Sea is then transported southward again through the Deep Western Boundary Cur-
20 rent (DWBC). Although the overturning circulation is a mathematical definition, and
21 therefore doesn't say anything about its own controlling physical mechanisms, it is
22 a key component of the understanding of the role of the ocean in global climate.
23 The concept of an overturning circulation is most easily understood by Sandström's
24 theorem. Sandström made tank experiments using heating and cooling sources at
25 different places on the tank. He found that a (vertical) circulation cannot take place
26 if the heating and cooling sources are located at the same depth. For a circulation
27 to form the cooling must be located at a lower pressure (i.e. shallower depth) than
28 the heating. In the real ocean, however, the water is warmed and cooled at same
29 depth; at the surface. The stability of an overturning was examined by the classic
30 Stommel box model (Stommel, 1961). In this study it was found that the circulation

1.1. OVERTURNING CIRCULATION

31 can be driven by buoyancy differences caused either by temperature or salinity dif-
32 ferences. An interesting aspect about the Stommel box model is that it assumes the
33 boxes to be mixed already by an external force (Stommel himself explicitly calls the
34 boxes "stirred vessels" and has drawn propellers in his diagram). Such an external
35 force does not exist in the real world, but the study shows that an overturning cir-
36 culation needs a mixing force, even though this was not the intention of Stommel
37 himself. Stommel and Sandström thus have in common that they did not account
38 for internal mixing of the ocean (they were probably not aware of its existence). The
39 imposing question is then: how is the water vertically mixed or ventilated?

40 Two theories are central to the answer to that question. The first one is that
41 the Ekman transport driven by the wind stress over the Southern Ocean causes the
42 upwelling to outcrop in the southern part of the Southern Ocean (Toggweiler and
43 Samuels, 1995). This is due the specific topography and geography of the Southern
44 Ocean. It is the only place on Earth (except the Arctic Ocean) where there are no
45 zonal boundaries in the form of land. The curl of the wind stress dictates that no net
46 meridional transport can occur above the highest point of the ocean bottom (which
47 is in the Drake Passage) (Pedlosky, 2013). The second theory is that diapycnal mix-
48 ing, which is omnipresent in the interior of the ocean, stirs the ocean to be vertically
49 mixed. This diapycnal mixing is largely due to the breaking of internal gravity waves
50 (Munk and Wunsch, 1998; Kunze and Smith, 2004).

51 In the real world the vertical-meridional circulation is referred to as the merid-
52 ional overturning circulation (MOC). It is, obviously, much more complicated than
53 the idealized concepts described above. First and foremost, it is a three dimen-
54 sional system made up by distinct currents and bodies of water. The wind driven
55 upwelling in the Southern Ocean plays a substantial part of it, but so does diapyc-
56 nal mixing across the interfaces of the different water masses thereby transforming
57 them. A detailed description of the global overturning and the driving mechanisms
58 behind it can be found in Talley (2013) but a schematic overview of how different
59 water masses and currents interact is shown in Fig. 1.1. The overturning here is cen-
60 tered on the Southern Ocean, which plays a key role by linking the Pacific, Atlantic
61 and Indian Oceans. Both the deep water formed in the Pacific, Indian, and North
62 Atlantic rise towards the surface in the Southern Ocean, while the Antarctic bottom
63 water is formed here but flows into both Pacific, Indian and Atlantic Oceans, where
64 it rises to more intermediate depths.

65 The Southern Ocean is thus recognized as a key region for the overturning. It
66 is characterized by the aforementioned zonal boundary-free geography, the Antarc-
67 tic Circumpolar Current (ACC) with its vigorous eddy field driven by strong wester-
68 lies, and its linkage of the Pacific, Atlantic and Indian Oceans (Talley, 2013; Rintoul
69 and Garabato, 2013). An increase in the overturning circulation, as a response to
70 stronger westerlies over the Southern Ocean and thus a stronger upwelling, has also
71 been hypothesized (Toggweiler, 2009) along with an increase in heat and carbon-
72 dioxide uptake by the SO (Russell et al., 2006). An increase in eddy activity rather
73 than a stronger overturning have also been argued as a more likely result of a higher
74 Southern Ocean wind stress (Jochum and Eden, 2015; Munday et al., 2013). This
75 phenomenon of an increase in eddy kinetic energy as a response to stronger wind

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

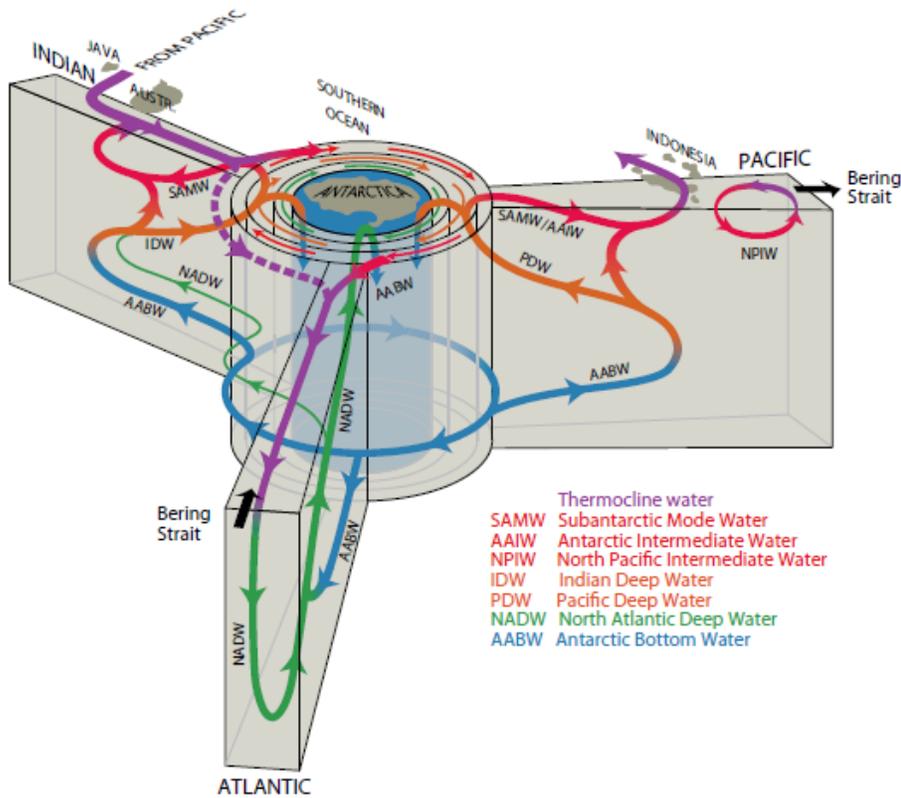


Figure 1.1: The global overturning circulation centered on the Southern Ocean (Talley, 2013), where both Pacific, Indian and North Atlantic Deep water rises towards the surface, and Subantarctic MODE Water flows into the three oceans, and Antarctic Bottom Water is formed. In the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Ocean the Antarctic Bottom Water mixes with the respective deep water via internal mixing.

76 forcing is known as eddy compensation (Johnson and Bryden, 1989).

77 Which of the two proposed mechanisms, the Ekman driven upwelling or the in-
 78 ternal wave driven mixing, controls the MOC as the main driver is still under de-
 79 bate, but the overall consensus is that both add a significant contribution (Kuhlbrodt
 80 et al., 2007; Talley, 2013)

81 1.2 Internal gravity waves

82 Internal gravity waves are oscillatory motions in a (density-)stratified ocean. In the
 83 ocean they are omnipresent and can be excited in a number of different ways. They
 84 are characterized by a vertical wavelength ranging from a few meters to a few kilo-

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

85 meters (horizontal wavelengths can reach a few hundred kilometers), and a fre-
86 quency between the local Coriolis frequency, f , and the local buoyancy frequency,
87 N . The dispersion relation sets the relation between the wave number and the fre-
88 quency

$$\omega^2 = \frac{N^2 k^2 + f^2 m^2}{k^2 + m^2}$$

89 where ω is the frequency, $k = \sqrt{k_1^2 + k_2^2}$ is the magnitude of the horizontal
90 wavenumber vector, and m is the vertical wavenumber. The frequency is set by the
91 angle of propagation with the horizontal plane, and given the generation site as a
92 point source the group velocity will be directed along the surface of a cone with the
93 phase velocity perpendicular to the surface (Sarkar and Scotti, 2017). The presence
94 of internal gravity waves is, as mentioned, a substantial factor in shaping the over-
95 turning circulation, but also affects such diverse fields as nutrient transport (Wong
96 et al., 2012; Leichter et al., 2003) and the shaping of continental slopes by sediment
97 transport (Cacchione et al., 2002).

98 Despite their broad range of wavenumbers and ways to be excited, the energy
99 density spectrum of internal gravity has been observed to have a near universal
100 shape; the so-called Garrett-Munk (GM) spectrum after Garrett and Munk (1972).
101 Although the GM model is used as a reference in many studies, pitfalls in its meth-
102 ods and deviations from the spectrum have also been put forward (for instance by
103 Wunsch (1975) and Polzin and Lvov (2011)). The reason we can observe this near
104 universal shape is still debated among oceanographers today, although it is believed
105 largely to be the result of non-linear wave-wave interactions (McComas, 1977; Lvov
106 and Tabak, 2001), which tend to transfer energy from small to high wavenumbers
107 (Olbers, 1976). When the horizontal velocity, U , becomes sufficiently large or the
108 vertical scale of the flow becomes comparably small the local stratification will
109 become unstable, $N^2 < 0$, which results in convective instability, or the shear of the
110 flow becomes large enough to infer a shear instability. In both instances this leads
111 to turbulent mixing (Sarkar and Scotti, 2017). A way to think of internal gravity
112 waves is therefore as a bridge between motions taking place on large and small
113 scales respectively.

114

115 1.2.1 Generation of internal gravity waves

116 Two sources of internal wave energy in the ocean, which have received a lot of re-
117 search attention, are the fluctuating winds at the surface and the tides at the bot-
118 tom. Fluctuations in wind stress at the ocean surface generate inertial motions in
119 the mixed layer ocean, which in turn leads to pressure gradients at the mixed layer
120 base. This produces near-inertial gravity waves propagating downwards into the in-
121 terior ocean (D'Asaro, 1985; Gill, 1984). The winds at the surface ocean produce an
122 estimated energy input of $0.3 - 1.4 TW$ (Alford, 2001; Watanabe and Hibiya, 2002;
123 Jiang et al., 2005; Rimac et al., 2013), but only a small fraction of about 10 – 15% of it

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

124 leaves the mixed layer for the interior ocean as near-inertial internal waves (Rimac
125 et al., 2016). The tidal energy depends on both the gravitational pull of the Moon and
126 the Sun, why the most clear signals are called the M2 and S2 tides. When the Moon
127 and the Sun are aligned (roughly every 14 days) their combined pull produces very
128 strong tides, and when they are at a right angle the tides are not so strong (spring-
129 neap-cycle). Flowing over topographic obstacles at the seafloor, these barotropic
130 tides generate disturbances in the density field, which radiate away from the obsta-
131 cles as internal waves. Jayne and St. Laurent (2001) estimate a dissipation of $1TW$
132 at depths greater than $1000m$ using a parameterization of internal waves, Nycander
133 (2005) directly calculated a tidal forcing of $1.2TW$ at depths greater than 500 meters
134 using linear wave theory, while Jayne and St. Laurent (2001) estimated about $1TW$
135 of tidal energy to be dissipated in the deep ocean from satellite altimeter data. An
136 estimate of about $1TW$ of tidal bottom forcing, thus seems like a robust estimate.
137 Another way in which internal gravity waves are generated is when not the tidal, but
138 the geostrophic current flows over such topographic features. In the same manner
139 as the tidal current, this also creates density perturbations on the lee side of such
140 an obstacle, hence the name lee waves. Pioneering work on this subject was made
141 by Bell (1975). When a water parcel flows geostrophically upwards along a slope
142 and thereafter downwards on the lee side, its velocity will be lower on upward side,
143 since it is doing work against a buoyancy force, and higher on the lee side, since it
144 moving in the same direction as the buoyancy force. This difference in velocity cre-
145 ates a pressure difference; higher pressure on the upward side and lower pressure on
146 the lee side. So over the hill there is a net horizontal force. This results in an equal
147 force from the bottom on the water parcel, which manifests itself in a vertical flux
148 of horizontal momentum away from the bottom. A schematic (although simplified)
149 overview of internal wave generation is shown in Fig. 1.2.

150 1.2.2 Lee waves

151 From the linearized equations of motions Bell (1975) calculated wave stress and
152 wave energy flux associated with such a geostrophic current flowing over topo-
153 graphic obstacles. A boundary condition to the linearized equations, is that the flow
154 at the bottom must be along the (sloping) bottom and therefore the solution to the
155 equations will always be a linear transformation of the bottom topography.

156 In the atmospheric literature, these waves are called 'mountain waves' (Teixeira,
157 2014), and can be observed as downslope winds and lenticular clouds. Their im-
158 portance in large-scale numerical weather prediction have long been recognized
159 (Palmer et al., 1986). The interest in oceanic lee waves began to increase after near
160 bottom intensification of ocean mixing was observed by Naveira Garabato et al.
161 (2004), who highlighted the interplay of deep-reaching currents and rough bottom
162 topography. In a regional high-resolution model forced by winds Nikurashin et al.
163 (2013) estimates an energy density (in wavenumberspace) two orders of magnitude
164 larger compared to that of a flat bottom using a randomly generated, multichro-
165 matic representation of the bottom topography. Compared to their flat bottom ex-
166 periment, where the wind energy input is removed by and large by a quadratic bot-
167 tom drag, the energy in the rough topography simulation is removed by subgrid

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

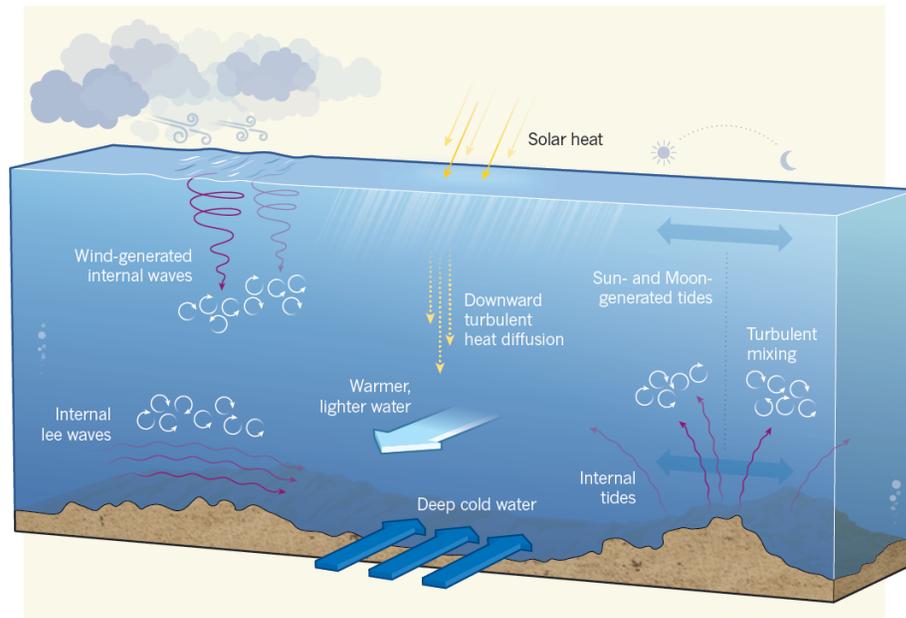


Figure 1.2: A schematic overview of sources of internal wave generation and interior ocean mixing taken from MacKinnon (2013).

168 scale processes, i.e. turbulent mixing.

169 Properly mapping of the bottom topography is thus a crucial part in assessing
170 the contribution of lee waves (and therefore internal waves in general) in interior
171 diapycnal mixing in global ocean general circulation models. Bell (1975) notes that
172 geostrophic currents are mostly modulated by topographic features characterized
173 by a horizontal extent of less than a few tens of kilometers; those classified as abyssal
174 hills. Goff and Jordan (1988) propose a so-called topography spectrum to capture
175 the distribution of such features. The spectrum is based on a statistical model and
176 is characterized by a few parameters; the topographic wavelength in both horizontal
177 directions (or inversely, the topographic wavenumbers), the root-mean-square
178 height of the abyssal hills, and the so-called strike angle measured from true North.
179 Indeed, following the work of Bell (1975) a measure of the height, breadth, and width
180 of a given topographic feature on the ocean floor is needed in order to estimate the
181 energy transferred from the mean flow impinging on such a feature into the gener-
182 ated lee waves. Goff and Arbic (2010) used an empirical relationship between paleo-
183 spreading rate data and abyssal hill roughness to determine these parameters. This
184 would need to be modified by a sedimentation data, since sedimentation acts to
185 smoothen rough seafloor topography (Goff and Jordan, 1988; Whittaker et al., 2013).
186 On the other hand Goff (2010) used small-scale altimetric gravity variability which
187 also accounts for sedimentation over time. This latter approach has the advantage

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

188 of already taking sedimentation cover into account, and it turns out that it is also
189 able to map an area roughly 45% larger than the spreading rate based one.

190 Another parameter important for lee wave generation is the Froude Number, de-
191 fined as the ratio of the geostrophic velocity to the buoyancy frequency times the
192 height of the topography, $Fr = U/HN$. In a 2D high-resolution, idealized setup with
193 parameters representing Drake Passage, Nikurashin and Ferrari (2010b) investigate
194 the effect of lee wave generation as a function of the Froude Number (they refer to
195 the Froude Number as the steepness parameter, since it also indicates the ratio of
196 the topographic slope to the slope of the internal wave phase lines). They conclude
197 that internal waves generated by a geostrophic rather than tidal current over rough
198 topography can infer diapycnal mixing rates increased by more than two orders of
199 magnitude near the bottom. This work was extended by an accompanying study
200 where the theoretical work was applied to lowered acoustic Doppler current pro-
201 filer, CTD, and topography data from the Southern Ocean (Nikurashin and Ferrari,
202 2010a). They estimate a total energy dissipation of $0.5 - 3.9 mWm^{-2}$ in a section
203 roughly 35° west of Drake Passage and $14 - 42 mWm^{-2}$ in a section in Drake Pas-
204 sage, with roughly half of this energy dissipates locally in the bottom kilometer of
205 the ocean. Application of the Bell theory to the global ocean GCM's has estimated
206 the global integrated energy flux from the mean flow to lee waves at $0.2 - 0.79 TW$
207 (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2011; Scott et al., 2011; Trossman et al., 2013; Wright et al.,
208 2014). The fairly large differences between these estimates are mostly due to the
209 different bottom velocities and different topographic spectrum used to predict the
210 energy flux. Integrating the Goff and Jordan (1988) spectra over the second topo-
211 graphic wavenumber to obtain a one-dimensional spectrum and fitting it to echo
212 sounding data, Nikurashin and Ferrari (2011) arrive at a global energy flux of $0.2 TW$.
213 Using a $1/12$ degree resolution ocean GCM along with the Goff and Arbic (2010) to-
214 pography data Trossman et al. (2013) obtains a global energy flux of roughly $0.45 TW$.
215 Assuming all energy dissipate locally, they compare two different schemes of lee
216 wave energy; the Bell scheme mentioned previously and the Garner scheme (Gar-
217 ner, 2005). The difference in energy flux between the two are roughly 10% with a
218 very similar spatial pattern. Comparing the lee wave drag on the mean flow with a
219 quadratic bottom drag, they find an increase of about 55% when using both rather
220 than only the bottom drag. This has significant effect on the bottom kinetic energy
221 and stratification. Furthermore, their offline estimate of the lee wave energy flux
222 calculated from the average velocities in the bottom 500m in the simulation without
223 lee wave drag amounts to $1.2 TW$ when globally integrated. This suggests two things;
224 first of all that bottom velocities have a larger effect on lee wave energy flux than
225 stratification, second of all that there is an internal negative feedback in the lee wave
226 generation process. This feedback is relatively straight forward: a stronger bottom
227 flow leads to a higher lee wave generation, which extracts the kinetic energy from
228 the mean flow and consumes it by vertically mixing the water column, so that the
229 stratification is lowered. Both of these effects (lower kinetic energy and lower strat-
230 ification) will in turn lower the lee wave generation itself. This mechanism is also
231 mentioned by Melet et al. (2015) who investigate future lee wave energy flux as a re-
232 sponse to different climatic scenarios. They use a non-eddy resolving GFDL climate
233 model and a parameterization of eddy kinetic energy (Eden and Greatbatch, 2008;

1.2. INTERNAL GRAVITY WAVES

234 Marshall and Adcroft, 2010) to calculate the lee wave energy flux, and find first of all
235 an overall decrease in lee wave energy flux in future climate scenarios as compared
236 to preindustrial conditions and second of all a clear seasonal cycle with maximum
237 in southern hemisphere summer.

238 The Southern Ocean has frequently been highlighted for its importance in lee
239 wave driven mixing (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2010a; Melet et al., 2014). The deep
240 reaching eddies provide a strong bottom flow and the topographic data suggests a
241 rough bottom with plenty of abyssal hill structure (Goff, 2010) which generate lee
242 waves. With the previously mentioned reported increase in the westerlies the future
243 of lee wave driven mixing in the Southern Ocean poses a relevant research topic.
244 Lee waves have also been shown to affect the overturning circulation significantly
245 by providing energy for a sustained water transformation in the lower cell of the
246 MOC (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2013), and by a lightening and increase in strength of
247 the lower cell of the MOC along with a warming of $0.2^\circ - 0.3^\circ C$ of the abyssal ocean
248 (Melet et al., 2014). The combined findings of Melet et al. (2014), Melet et al. (2015)
249 and Scott et al. (2011) clearly calls for an inline calculation of lee wave energy flux in
250 ocean models rather than an offline diagnostic.

251 Despite these calls for the inclusion of lee waves in ocean models, direct ob-
252 servations of lee waves are extremely sparse due to their complex nature and their
253 intermittency in both time and space. Due to the lack of observational data, the
254 route from lee wave generation to ocean mixing is poorly understood and likewise
255 constrained in models (Legg, 2021). Most efforts to observe them or their effect have
256 been dedicated to the Southern Ocean.

257 **1.2.3 Energy transfer and dissipation**

258 Once internal gravity waves have been generated, they freely propagate in the ocean,
259 as long as their frequency is larger than the local Coriolis frequency, f , and smaller
260 than the local stability frequency, N . Along the way they can exchange energy with
261 both other waves and the mean flow. The exchange with the mean flow can have
262 either sign and is reversible if the wave is reflected at surface or bottom, as long as the
263 wave does not brake underway (Boyd, 1976), whereas the exchange with other waves
264 are usually non-linear and very complex (Eden et al., 2019). These interactions infer
265 a downward cascade of energy transfer within the internal wave spectrum from large
266 to small scale motions, and non-linear theory predicts a transfer of energy between
267 three interacting waves when the conditions

$$\omega_0 = \omega_1 \pm \omega_2$$

$$\mathbf{k}_0 = \mathbf{k}_1 \pm \mathbf{k}_2$$

268 are met. Three mechanisms were identified by McComas and Bretherton (1977)
269 for this downward energy cascade to take place. One is parametric subharmonic
270 instability (PSI). This refers to a triad wave interaction, where energy is transferred
271 from a wave with large frequency and small wavenumber to two waves with nearly
272 half the frequency and opposite wavenumbers. The amount of energy transferred is

1.3. OCEAN MIXING

273 proportional to the energy of the larger wave. MacKinnon et al. (2013) presented
274 observational evidence of this from the Pacific Ocean near $29^\circ N$ where the tidal
275 frequency is close to the double of the inertial frequency. Induced diffusion (ID)
276 describes the transfer of energy from a high frequency, large wavenumber wave en-
277 counteracting a low frequency, small wavenumber second wave to a nearly identical
278 large wavenumber, high frequency third wave. The third mechanism, elastic scat-
279 tering, transfers energy between an upward and a downward propagating wave with
280 nearly the same frequencies and nearly opposite vertical wave numbers encounter-
281 ing a third low frequency, nearly vertical wave. Eden et al. (2019) numerically evalu-
282 ate energy transfers in wavenumber space by nonlinear wave-wave interaction with
283 three different methods (of increasingly computational costs) and finds reasonable
284 agreement with the parameterization by McComas and Müller (1981) derived for PSI
285 and ID only.

286 As energy is transferred towards higher and higher wavenumbers, the velocity shear
287 over the wave amplitude can become so large that it leads to shear instability (this is
288 depicted as Kelvin-Helmholtz billows by Smyth et al. (2001)), or the local stability fre-
289 quency becomes negative leading to convective instability (Sarkar and Scotti, 2017);
290 in other words, the wave will break and the water column will be mixed.

291 **1.3 Ocean Mixing**

292 Ocean mixing is usually defined as the irreversible process through which two or
293 more water masses are mixed to one. Before the mixing there are two (or more) wa-
294 ter masses and after the mixing there is one. At the molecular scale mixing is char-
295 acterized as molecular diffusion, which is an inherent physical quality of all fluids.
296 If you leave two water masses of different density at rest but in contact, eventually
297 they will mix because of molecular diffusion.

298 If a large body of water is moving with the right flow characteristics, however,
299 mixing can also take place within the body of water as an inherent consequence of
300 the flow characteristics. A usual distinction in fluid dynamics is that between lam-
301 inar and turbulent flows. In the former the flow is smooth and constant and it is
302 dominated by internal viscous forces, whereas in the latter the flow is chaotic, pro-
303 duces swirling motions called eddies and is dominated by inertial forces. The dis-
304 tinction between these two types of flow is done via the Reynold's Number, which
305 signifies the ratio of inertial forces to internal viscous forces. Turbulent flows thus
306 have a high Reynold's Number, whereas laminar flows have a low one. The eddies
307 associated with turbulent flows act to increase (velocity and tracer) gradients and
308 therefore also molecular mixing. An intrinsic effect of turbulent flow is thus, that it
309 increases both the molecular mixing (via sharper gradients) and also introduces tur-
310 bulent mixing itself. Another distinct feature of the eddies associated with turbulent
311 flows is that they easily become unstable, breaking up into smaller eddies thereby
312 transferring their energy to smaller and smaller scales and in the end to internal en-
313 ergy, i.e. heat (Richardson, 1920).

314 Mixing can also be obtained from a mechanical input, though. In the real world
315 oceans, winds mix the surface layers and, as mentioned, tides and geostrophic mo-

1.3. OCEAN MIXING

316 tions provide energy at the bottom. In the interior ocean, mixing is commonly as-
317 sociated with the breaking of internal gravity waves (Polzin et al., 1997; Wunsch and
318 Ferrari, 2004). In contrast to molecular mixing, the mixing produced by eddies and
319 internal gravity waves is referred to as turbulent mixing. It can be observed through
320 fine- and microstructure measurements (Polzin et al., 1995; Oakey, 1982), in which
321 disciplines the most important quantities to be familiar with are the dissipation rate
322 of turbulent kinetic energy (TKE) - ϵ , and the diapycnal diffusivity, κ_ρ . Microstruc-
323 ture processing provides centimeter-scale measurements of the vertical shear of ve-
324 locity, from which the dissipation rate of turbulent kinetic energy is calculated as

$$\epsilon = \frac{15}{2} \nu \overline{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial z}\right)^2}$$

325 where ν is the molecular viscosity and u is the velocity (Oakey, 1982; Sheen et al.,
326 2013; Waterman et al., 2013). Finestructure measurements are obtained from CTD
327 (conductivity, temperature and depth) and LADCP (lowered acoustic Doppler cur-
328 rent profiler) casts and have a vertical resolutions of $\mathcal{O}(1m)$ and $\mathcal{O}(10m)$ capturing
329 internal waves, and they calculate the TKE dissipation rate based on the velocity
330 shear and the vertical change of isopycnal displacement; the strain. As such the
331 finestructure method of calculating implicitly assume internal gravity waves to be
332 the source of TKE dissipation. The diapycnal diffusivity, κ_ρ , is calculated using the
333 dissipation rate

$$\kappa_\rho = \frac{\Gamma \epsilon}{N^2}$$

334 where Γ is the mixing efficiency, i.e. the amount of energy effectively acting
335 to mix the fluids. The mixing efficiency is usually taken to be $\Gamma = 0.2$, although
336 the notion that this value is constant throughout the entire ocean is contested
337 (De Lavergne et al., 2016). This equation is known as the Osborn-Cox relation after
338 Osborn and Cox (1972). It relates a shear production of TKE with a turbulent buoy-
339 ancy flux and the dissipation rate of TKE by assuming a steady state conservation.
340 The turbulent buoyancy flux is assumed downgradient, and assuming a fixed mixing
341 efficiency amounts to assuming the ratio of the shear production and the buoyancy
342 flux constant. As such, the Osborn-Cox relation can be interpreted as a local budget
343 of turbulent kinetic energy.

344 In addition to mixing caused by internal waves generated from the interaction
345 between the bottom geostrophic current and abyssal hills, Klymak (2018) estimates
346 a dissipation resulting from mean flow over large scale topographic features. Under
347 linear theory, topographic features with $k < f/u_0$ will not generate internal waves
348 because the topographic wavenumber is not sufficiently large (or the flow not suffi-
349 ciently strong), the disturbances in the velocity and buoyancy fields are evanescent.
350 But for flows with inverse Froude number larger than unity (the so-called large-scale
351 abyssal hills) Klymak (2018) argues that dissipation due to these evanescent pertur-
352 bations is underestimated by up to a factor of two in high resolution models.

1.3. OCEAN MIXING

353 1.3.1 Observations of ocean mixing

354 Munk (1966) found that if diapycnal diffusion is to sustain a deepwater formation of
355 $30Sv$ ($1Sv = 10^6 m^3/s$), an ocean average value of $\kappa_\rho = 10^{-4} m^2/s$ is needed.

356 Later observational campaigns were not able to find diffusivities in the interior
357 ocean so large. Values that were an order of magnitude lower than the canonical
358 Munk value were common (Ledwell et al., 1993, 1998). Diapycnal diffusivities larger
359 than $K_\rho = 10^{-3} m^2/s$ near the ocean floor have later been observed while in the pro-
360 cess highlighting the breaking of internal gravity waves as the main source of the
361 mixing (Polzin et al., 1995, 1997; Ledwell et al., 2000; Naveira Garabato et al., 2004).
362 The observational data contributed to form the idea that vertical mixing by internal
363 wave breaking played a larger role in ocean circulation than previously assumed.

364 St. Laurent et al. (2012) find enhanced turbulent dissipation rates as large as
365 $10^{-8} Wkg^{-1}$ and diapycnal diffusivity rates of $10^{-4} m^2 s^{-1}$ near the bottom in two
366 frontal regions in the Drake Passage characterized by high near bottom mean ve-
367 locity. They suggest the generation of lee waves as the driving mechanism for the
368 enhanced dissipation. Sheen et al. (2013) extend this analysis to dissipation and
369 diffusivity rates and internal wavefield properties at four transects going from the
370 southeast Pacific to the Scotia Sea. They observe turbulent dissipation rates in-
371 crease from $\mathcal{O}(10^{-10}) Wkg^{-1}$ in the southeast Pacific to $\mathcal{O}(10^{-9}) Wkg^{-1}$ in the Scotia
372 Sea. They, too, credit the enhanced bottom diapycnal mixing to the breaking of lee
373 waves, although they observe a discrepancy between the increased turbulent dissi-
374 pation and the theoretical predicted lee wave energy input. Large dissipation and
375 diffusivity rates have also been reported over the bottommost 1000m of the Ker-
376 guelen plateau by Waterman et al. (2013). In this study TKE dissipation rates on
377 the order of $\mathcal{O}(10^{-9}) Wkg^{-1}$ are accompanied by turbulent mixing rates on the or-
378 der of $\mathcal{O}(10^{-3}) m^2 s^{-1}$. Although this study shows a qualitative match between ob-
379 served dissipation rates and predicted lee wave energy flux, there is a quantitative
380 discrepancy as the observed near-bottom dissipation is about an order of magni-
381 tude smaller than the theoretical prediction of the lee wave generation. A possible
382 explanation of this discrepancy is hypothesized to be the energy transfer from the
383 lee waves to the mean flow via nonlinear wave-mean flow interaction. Similarly
384 Meyer et al. (2015b) report diffusivities larger than $10^{-3} m^2 s^{-1}$ at 1400m depth at
385 the Kerguelen Plateau and credit the internal waves generated by interaction be-
386 tween strong bottom currents and rough bottom topography for the large mixing.
387 Furthermore, they infer a water mass transformation of $17Sv$ in the Subantarctic/-
388 Subtropical front at the Upper Circumpolar Deep Water/Antarctic Intermediate Wa-
389 ter boundary. All in all, the observational evidence of the effects of lee wave driven
390 mixing in the Southern Ocean is substantial with several reports of turbulent dif-
391 fusivity and dissipation rates reaching orders of magnitude of $\mathcal{O}(10^{-3}) m^2 s^{-1}$ and
392 $\mathcal{O}(10^{-8}) Wkg^{-1}$ respectively. Cusack et al. (2017) document the first unambiguous
393 observation of a lee wave near the Shackleton Fracture Zone in the Drake Passage.
394 They report a vertical wave amplitude of $120 \pm 20m$ and an associated estimation
395 of TKE dissipation on the order of $\mathcal{O}(10^{-7}) Wkg^{-1}$. In the Atlantic Ocean observa-
396 tions are more sparse, although Köhler et al. (2014) document increased diapycnal
397 diffusivity where the deep western boundary current meets the continental shelf in

1.4. OCEAN MIXING IN MODELS AND IDEMIX

398 the western Atlantic, and suggests breaking lee waves as an explanation due to the
 399 combination of strong currents and rough topography.

400 1.4 Ocean mixing in models and IDEMIX

401 The mixing takes place on scales far too small for ocean models to resolve it directly.
 402 Instead mixing must be parametrized. Traditionally, though, diapycnal diffusivity
 403 has been set as constant value in ocean models, and later as a function simply of
 404 depth (Munk, 1966; Bryan and Lewis, 1979) or of the stability frequency (Cummins
 405 et al., 1990). While a depth-varying function is more realistic than a constant value,
 406 both approaches serve as a best guess with the inherent problem that they are ne-
 407 glecting the physical mechanism, which actually causes the mixing. A parametriza-
 408 tion of diapycnal diffusivity ought thus to be based on the energetics of internal grav-
 409 ity waves. Olbers and Eden (2013) developed the energetically consistent internal
 410 wave model IDEMIX. An in-depth explanation of the model is not the scope of this
 411 section, but a quick recap of the governing principles and of the way in which the
 412 diffusivity is calculated on the basis of internal wave energetics is provided follow-
 413 ing Olbers and Eden (2013). The model is based on the radiative transfer equation
 414 for weakly interacting oceanic internal gravity waves (Hasselmann, 1967) and by ex-
 415 ploiting the conservation of wave action, $A = E/\omega$, rather than energy (Olbers et al.,
 416 2012). This is valid for waves propagating in a medium, where the length and time
 417 scales of the mean field quantities are much larger than the length- and timescales
 418 of the waves; the so-called WKB approximation named after Wentzel, Kramers and
 419 Brillouin. In WKB theory all changes in wave action must happen due to a specific
 420 source or sink. The radiative transfer equation thus takes the form

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\dot{\mathbf{x}}A) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (\dot{z}A) + \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \cdot (\mathbf{k}A) + \frac{\partial}{\partial m} (\dot{m}A) = S_{gen} + S_{ww} + S_{diss} \quad (1.1)$$

421 where $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \nabla_{\mathbf{k}}\Omega$ and $\dot{z} = \partial\Omega/\partial m$ are the lateral and vertical group velocity,
 422 $\dot{\mathbf{k}} = -\nabla\Omega$ and $\dot{m} = -\partial\Omega/\partial z$ are the lateral and vertical wave refraction, and $\Omega =$
 423 $\Omega(\mathbf{k}, m, \mathbf{x}, z, t)$ is the local dispersion relation of the wave. The three terms on the
 424 right hand side constitutes the changes caused by wave action generation by ex-
 425 ternal processes, wave action generated by resonant wave-wave interactions, and
 426 wave action dissipation. If one assumes a horizontal homogeneous ocean in the
 427 WKB sense the lateral refraction and propagation, i.e. the second and fourth term
 428 on the left hand side, vanishes from the radiative transfer equation.

429 From this an advection-diffusion scheme of internal gravity wave energy is de-
 430 veloped by integrating over all wavenumbers. The scheme splits the wave energy in
 431 up- and downward propagating parts, which then still contain a dissipation and a
 432 wave-wave interaction term. The wave-wave interaction term in Eq. 1.1 conserves
 433 the total wave energy and is assumed to relax the wave field toward a symmetry in
 434 m , whereas the dissipation term is specified by using a steady-state equation of the
 435 conservation equation of turbulent kinetic energy (TKE) on the form

1.4. OCEAN MIXING IN MODELS AND IDEMIX

$$0 = -\overline{\mathbf{u}'_h w'} \frac{\partial \overline{\mathbf{u}}_h}{\partial z} + \overline{b' w'} - \epsilon$$

436 Here primed quantities refer to turbulent fluctuations, and the overbar indicates
 437 wave field values. The first term on the right hand side is the shear production of
 438 TKE, the second term is the vertical buoyancy flux (exchange of potential energy)
 439 and the third term is the heat exchange. The core of IDEMIX is thus centered around
 440 a local conservation of TKE. The shear production term is assumed to be generated
 441 by wave breaking, and as such the dissipation of internal wave energy integrated
 442 over wavenumbers is given by

$$\int_{\mathbf{k}} \int_m S_{diss} = F_{diss} = -\overline{\mathbf{u}'_h w'} \frac{\partial \overline{\mathbf{u}}_h}{\partial z}$$

443 There is thus a balance in TKE generated by wave breaking, heat generation, and
 444 the turbulent buoyancy flux, which is assumed to be negatively proportional to the
 445 density gradient as $\overline{b' w'} = -\kappa_\rho N^2$. Here, the proportionality factor κ_ρ is the vertical
 446 diffusivity and N is the local buoyancy or Brunt-Väisälä frequency. This renders the
 447 equation

$$F_{diss} = \epsilon + \kappa_\rho N^2$$

448 which states that the dissipation of turbulent kinetic energy caused by the break-
 449 ing of internal gravity waves is consumed by a downward buoyancy flux and heat
 450 generation. It is worth noticing here, that if the ratio between F_{diss} and $\kappa_\rho N^2$ is
 451 constant here, we are left with exactly the Osborn-Cox relation described in section
 452 1.3.

453 By using a combination of parameterizations, found by McComas and Müller
 454 (1981) and Henyey et al. (1986), which describe the energy transfer from low to high
 455 wavenumbers due to parametric subharmonic instability (PSI) and induced diffu-
 456 sion (ID), the dissipation caused by the breaking of internal gravity waves is given
 457 by

$$F_{diss} = \mu_0 f_e \frac{m_\star^2}{N^2} E^2 \quad (1.2)$$

458 (Olbers and Eden, 2013). Here F_{diss} is described as the energy flux from the
 459 high wavenumber roll-off in internal gravity wave domain to the turbulent mix-
 460 ing domain, $m_\star = N/c_\star$ is the bandwidth of the GM-spectrum, f_e is an "effective"
 461 Coriolis frequency, and E is the internal wave energy. An attempt to parameter-
 462 ize diffusivity from internal wave energy was already made by Müller and Natarov
 463 (2003), but the partial differential equation ends up being a function of six variables
 464 (space and wavenumber coordinates), which leaves it computationally very heavy.
 465 IDEMIX seeks to remedy this problem by integrating in wavenumber space. As such,

1.4. OCEAN MIXING IN MODELS AND IDEMIX

466 it is important to notice that E in Eq. 1.2 is the internal wave energy integrated in
 467 wavenumber space. If the ratio between the shear production term and the buoy-
 468 ancy flux is assumed constant, i.e. $\kappa_\rho N^2 / F_{diss} = C$, which as mentioned amounts to
 469 using the Osborn-Cox relation or assuming a constant mixing efficiency, an expres-
 470 sion for the diffusivity can be reached

$$\kappa_\rho = \frac{\delta}{1+\delta} \frac{F_{diss}}{N^2} = \frac{\delta}{1+\delta} \mu_0 f_e \frac{E^2}{c_\star^2 N^2} \quad (1.3)$$

471 where $\delta = C/(1-C)$. c_\star is related to the spectral bandwidth of the GM-model via
 472 one of the three central tunable parameters in the model, j_\star , and is dependent on
 473 the vertical integral of the buoyancy frequency N . The other two tunable parameters
 474 are the constant μ_0 , and the vertical decay scale of internal wave energy asymmetry,
 475 τ_ν . As such the vertical diffusivity scales with the square of the internal wave energy,
 476 but because of the complex dependency of c_\star on N , the dependence of the diffu-
 477 sivity on the buoyancy frequency is not straightforward (this will be elaborated in
 478 section 2).

$$\kappa_\rho \sim E^2$$

479 The model was further developed to include wave-mean flow interaction first by
 480 Olbers and Eden (2017) in an idealized model with a prescribed stability frequency
 481 and unidirectional mean flow as functions of depth, and afterwards by Eden and
 482 Olbers (2017) in an ocean general circulation model which shows wave-mean flow
 483 interaction (or wave-drag) as a significant sink of mean flow energy in the North At-
 484 lantic. The wave-mean flow energy exchange is calculated in accordance with the
 485 non-acceleration theorem by Boyd (1976) and Andrews and McIntyre (1976), which
 486 states that gravity waves cannot exchange energy with a mean flow in the absence of
 487 critical layers and dissipation. The predicted energy and dissipation levels was eval-
 488 uated against Argo float and CTD data by Pollmann et al. (2017) in order to estimate
 489 values for tunable parameters in the model.

490 1.4.1 Energy consistency and pyOM

491 One of the strengths of IDEMIX is, as mentioned, the fact that it is energetically con-
 492 sistent to numerical precision. Such a construction relies upon the interaction of
 493 the energy of the mean variables with all parameterized quantities. In general, this
 494 is not the case for ocean models (Eden and Olbers, 2014). In parameterizations of
 495 unresolved processes, many closures do not account for the energy used in the pro-
 496 cess (for instance the widely used parameterization of Gent and McWilliams (1990)).
 497 A common way to deal with this problem is to reinject the lost energy to an appro-
 498 priate dynamical regime. In an energetically consistent model, all energy compart-
 499 ments would be linked, and terms adding energy to one compartment would be
 500 removed in another. Such an approach would ensure no energy is neither gained
 501 nor lost in the model, but special attention would have to be paid to the resolved

1.4. OCEAN MIXING IN MODELS AND IDEMIX

502 and unresolved parameterized dynamical regimes. Decomposing the ocean circu-
503 lation into three different regimes - the geostrophically quasi-balanced motions, the
504 internal gravity wave range, and the small-scale turbulence domain - Eden and Ol-
505 bers (2014) calculate energy transfers and estimate the internal wave field to provide
506 $2 - 3TW$ for mixing, and $1.8TW$ wind work on the large scale circulation.

507 In the work laid out in this thesis, IDEMIX is coupled to the ocean general
508 circulation model pyOM (Olbers and Eden (2013), source code can be found at
509 <https://github.com/ceden/pyOM2>), which solves the primitive equations in Boussi-
510 nesq approximation.

511 The energy budget in pyOM is based on the enthalpy (the internal energy plus
512 gravitational potential energy), $h = u + \phi$. This is a sophisticated implementation be-
513 cause an intrinsic feature of the Boussinesq approximation is that the gravitational
514 potential energy is not given by the geopotential, but it is rather a thermodynamic
515 quantity. The enthalpy is comprised of two contributors; the dynamic enthalpy, h^d ,
516 representing reversible energy changes and the potential enthalpy, h° , representing
517 irreversible energy changes, $h = h^d + h^\circ$ (McDougall, 2003; Young, 2010; Nycander,
518 2011). In pyOM the energy of the mean field is described by the mean dynamic
519 enthalpy plus the mean kinetic energy. The first one is forced by solar radiation and
520 the latter by winds, and energy exchange between the two is reversible. Both have an
521 energy sink to a meso-scale eddy domain and to an unresolved turbulent kinetic en-
522 ergy (TKE) domain. The energy fluxes to the meso-scale eddy domain is given by the
523 eddy mixing from the mean dynamic enthalpy and by a lateral friction from by the
524 mean kinetic energy, and they are governed by the closure of Eden and Greatbatch
525 (2008) drawing upon Gent and McWilliams (1990). The fluxes to the TKE domain are
526 governed by the closure of Gaspar et al. (1990) with vertical friction accounting for
527 the flux from mean kinetic energy the to TKE and dianeutral friction accounting for
528 the flux from the mean dynamic enthalpy to the TKE. Subsequently the eddy kinetic
529 energy (EKE) has an energy sink to the internal gravity wave (IGW) domain (Eden
530 and Olbers, 2014). The IGW domain is governed by IDEMIX, and this is where the
531 new lee wave compartment is added. The original version of IDEMIX is forced by an
532 energy flux from barotropic tides from Jayne (2009) at the bottom and at the surface
533 by an energy flux from the mixed layer into the interior in the near-inertial band, i.e.
534 wind-forcing, from Rimac et al. (2013). IDEMIX contains an energy sink to the TKE
535 domain, which therefore has sources from both the internal wave domain and from
536 the mean field. There is an irreversible energy exchange from the TKE domain to the
537 potential enthalpy domain, which accounts for heat gain.

538 All variables are calculated on the staggered Arakawa-C grid (Arakawa and Lamb,
539 1977), where the density and pressure are calculated on the center of the grid and the
540 (three-dimensional) velocity on the eastern, northern and upper boundary of the
541 grid box. The model keeps track of all energy exchange between external forcing,
542 dissipation to heat and exchange between resolved and unresolved (parameterized)
543 processes.

1.5. OUTLINE

544 **1.5 Outline**

545 The concepts and results laid out in the former paragraphs form the background
546 knowledge required to put this thesis into a scientific context. Hopefully, it will equip
547 the reader with the understanding of why the research carried out here is important.
548 In chapter 2 the formulation of a lee wave module in IDEMIX is developed. The
549 chapter also contains some important considerations about its implementation in
550 an internal wave model is presented. Chapter 3 will narrow the research topic fur-
551 ther and present the central key questions, which the thesis will try to answer. Here
552 the model and experimental setups in which the research has been carried out will
553 also be elucidated. The results of the research analysis starts in chapter 4, is further
554 expanded in the main analysis in chapter 5, and ends with a regional focus in chap-
555 ter 6. The results are discussed and put into a greater scientific perspective with the
556 base in recent research in chapter 7. Final conclusions are presented in chapter 8.

557 Chapter 2

558 Developing a lee wave module 559 in the internal wave model 560 IDEMIX

561 This section will lay out the theoretical framework required to understand the imple-
562 mentation of lee waves in the internal wave model IDEMIX. The starting point will
563 be the incompressible equations of motions in Boussinesq approximation. From
564 there follows first a simplified example of how the upward lee wave energy flux can
565 be calculated and subsequently a more generalized derivation of the energy flux,
566 which will form the basis the basis of the lee wave component of IDEMIX. The com-
567 ponent will then be thoroughly elaborated, where the energy flux will be used in
568 the context of IDEMIX. Key equations of IDEMIX, and the exact link between the
569 lee wave component and the rest of the model will in this process be emphasized.
570 In the end the boundary conditions will be formulated, and consequences for the
571 implementation due to assumptions about the topography will be laid out.

572 2.1 A simple lee wave energy flux

573 Separating the motions in horizontal and vertical components, the incompressible
574 equations of motions in Boussinesq approximations is given as

$$D\mathbf{u} + w\partial_z\mathbf{u} + f\mathbf{u} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\nabla p \quad (2.1)$$

$$Dw + w\partial_z w - b = -\frac{1}{\rho_0}\partial_z p \quad (2.2)$$

$$Db + w\partial_z b = 0 \quad (2.3)$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u} + \partial_z w = 0 \quad (2.4)$$

2.1. A SIMPLE LEE WAVE ENERGY FLUX

575 where \mathbf{u} is the horizontal velocity vector and ∇ is the horizontal gradient opera-
 576 tor, w is the vertical velocity, ρ_0 is a reference density, f is the Coriolis frequency,
 577 p is the pressure, the material operator $D = \partial_t + \mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla + w \partial_z$, and the buoyancy
 578 $b = -g\rho/\rho_0$. The ∇ sign indicates a 90° counterclockwise rotation of a vector. Here I
 579 have neglected the forces induced by the horizontal component of the Coriolis force,
 580 as is traditional, why a rotational term only appears in the horizontal momentum
 581 equations. The bottom boundary condition is a no-normal flow

$$w|_{z=-h} = -\mathbf{u}|_{z=-h} \cdot \nabla h \quad (2.5)$$

582 All quantities can now be split into a mean component and a perturbation or
 583 wave component, as $w = \bar{w} + w'$, by space-time averaging, where the overbar mean
 584 quantity and the prime signifies the perturbation. The equations for the mean mo-
 585 mentum and buoyancy thus become

$$\partial_t \bar{\mathbf{u}} + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \bar{\mathbf{u}} + \bar{w} \partial_z \bar{\mathbf{u}} + f \bar{\mathbf{u}} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla \bar{p} - \mathbf{R} \quad (2.6)$$

$$\partial_t \bar{w} + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \bar{w} + \bar{w} \frac{\partial \bar{w}}{\partial z} - \bar{b} = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \partial_z \bar{p} - R \quad (2.7)$$

$$\partial_t \bar{b} + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \bar{b} + \bar{w} N^2 = -B \quad (2.8)$$

586 where I have defined the the buoyancy frequency (or stratification) $N^2 = d\bar{b}/dz$.
 587 \mathbf{R} and R contains the so-called Reynold's stresses, which appear in the space-time
 588 averaging of the second term on the left hand side of Eq. 2.1 and 2.2. B similarly
 589 contains the mean wave-induced buoyancy flux. The equations for the wave com-
 590 ponent comes about from subtracting equations for the mean components from the
 591 equations for the full field

$$(\partial_t + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla + \bar{w} \partial_z) \mathbf{u}' + f \mathbf{u}' = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla p' - \mathbf{R} - (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla - w' \partial_z) \bar{\mathbf{u}} \quad (2.9)$$

$$(\partial_t + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla + \bar{w} \partial_z) w' - b' = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \partial_z p' - R - (\mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla - w' \partial_z) \bar{w} \quad (2.10)$$

$$\partial_t b' + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla b' + w' N^2 = -B - \mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla \bar{b} \quad (2.11)$$

592 where last two terms in Eq. 2.9 and 2.10 and the last term in Eq. 2.11 originate
 593 from the advective term on the right hand side. These are the wave-induced advec-
 594 tion of mean momentum and mean buoyancy.

595 We can imagine a simplified case, where the mean wave-induced stresses and
 596 the wave-induced advection of mean momentum and buoyancy are neglected on
 597 the right hand, and we are left with equations for the wave components including a
 598 term with advection by the mean flow. If this mean flow is considered as a constant
 599 $\bar{\mathbf{u}} = (U_0, 0)$, the wave equations become

2.1. A SIMPLE LEE WAVE ENERGY FLUX

$$(\partial_t + U_0 \partial_x) \mathbf{u}' + f \mathbf{u}' = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \nabla p' \quad (2.12)$$

$$(\partial_t + U_0 \partial_x) w' = -\frac{1}{\rho_0} \partial_z p' + b' \quad (2.13)$$

$$(\partial_t + U_0 \partial_x) b' + w' N^2 = 0 \quad (2.14)$$

600 Here, assuming steady solutions, we can combine these into a single equation
601 for w' (Legg, 2021).

$$U_0^2 \partial_x^2 (\nabla^2 + \partial_z^2) w' + f \partial_z^2 w' + N^2 \nabla^2 w' = 0 \quad (2.15)$$

602 With a mean flow over, in this case, a simplified topography given by a sinusoidal

$$h = h_0 \sin(kx) \quad (2.16)$$

603 where k is the topographic wavenumber, the linearized bottom boundary con-
604 dition in a generalized form becomes

$$w' = -U_0 \partial_x h = -U_0 k h_0 \cos(kx) \quad (2.17)$$

605 In other words, such a mean flow at the bottom will generate lee waves, and since
606 the mean flow does not have a time dependency, the frequency of encounter of these
607 waves is equal to zero, but the Doppler-shifted frequency is equal to $\omega = -U_0 k$. In
608 the water column the vertical wave velocity attains a generalized form associated
609 with the bottom boundary condition

$$w' = -U_0 k h_0 \cos(kx + m(z + H))$$

610 From Eq. 2.12-2.14 we are now able to calculate the buoyancy and pressure as-
611 sociated with the lee waves.

$$b' = h_0 N^2 \sin(kx + m(z + H)) \quad (2.18)$$

$$p' = \rho_0 h_0 \frac{1}{m} (N^2 - U_0^2 k^2) \cos(kx + m(z + H)) \quad (2.19)$$

612 The waves induce a vertical energy flux given by pressure times the vertical ve-
613 locity.

$$F = \langle w' p' \rangle = -\frac{k}{2m} \rho_0 h_0^2 U_0 (N^2 - U_0^2 k^2) \quad (2.20)$$

2.2. GENERALIZING THE BASIC EXAMPLE

614 where m is negative, signifying an upward energy flux, and the brackets indicate
 615 an average taken over one topographic wavelength. From Eq. 2.15 we can derive a
 616 dispersion relation, which can give us an estimate of the energy flux when used in
 617 Eq. 2.20

$$m^2 = k^2 \frac{N^2 - \omega^2}{\omega^2 - f^2} \quad (2.21)$$

618 The dispersion relation shows that lee waves can only have frequencies in the
 619 range between the Coriolis frequency and the local stability frequency, $f < U_0 k <$
 620 N . It also shows the limits of the topography which can create lee waves. If the
 621 bottom speed is $U_0 \sim \mathcal{O}(0.1 \text{ m/s})$ and $f \sim \mathcal{O}(10^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1})$ the topographic wavenumber
 622 is $k \sim \mathcal{O}(10^{-3} \text{ m}^{-1})$, or in other words the topographic wavelength is $\lambda \sim 1 \text{ km}$. Of
 623 course, these are rough numbers, but in general the topographic wavelength is a
 624 few kilometers, and these are often called abyssal hills (Goff and Arbic, 2010).

625 2.2 Generalizing the basic example

626 In case we are not dealing with a simplified mean flow and topography as described
 627 above, the derivation of the upward energy flux generated by lee waves is a bit more
 628 complicated. Linearizing the equations of motions around a basic state gives equa-
 629 tions for the perturbation or wave part (of the first three equations)

$$\partial_t \mathbf{u}' + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{u}' + w' \partial_z \mathbf{u}' + f \mathbf{u}' = -\nabla p' \quad (2.22)$$

$$\partial_t w' + \bar{\mathbf{u}} \cdot \nabla w' + w' \partial_z w' - b' = -\partial_z p' \quad (2.23)$$

$$\partial_t b' + \mathbf{u}' \cdot \nabla b' + w' N^2 = 0 \quad (2.24)$$

630 Along with Eq. 2.4 these can be rearranged to form the equation for the vertical
 631 wave velocity w'

$$D^2 (\nabla^2 + \partial_z^2) w' + N^2 \nabla^2 w' + f^2 \partial_z^2 w' = 0 \quad (2.25)$$

632 The bottom boundary condition is still given as a no-normal flow, i.e. $w = -\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla h$
 633 at $z = -H$. We now wish to attain an expression for an upward energy flux at the bot-
 634 tom. Since the waves are generated by the mean flow at the bottom (i.e. no time de-
 635 pendency) they must have a frequency of encounter (or Doppler shifted frequency)
 636 equal to zero and an intrinsic frequency $\omega = -\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{U}_0$, where \mathbf{U}_0 is the bottom velocity.

637 Generalizing to a two-dimensional topography spectrum and a bottom flow
 638 $\mathbf{U}_0 = (U_0, V_0)$ Bell (1975) gives the bottom energy flux as

$$F_{bell} = \frac{\rho_0}{4\pi^2} \frac{\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{k}}{\mathbf{k}} P(\mathbf{k}) (N^2 - (\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{k})^2)^{1/2} ((\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{k})^2 - f^2)^{1/2}$$

2.2. GENERALIZING THE BASIC EXAMPLE

639 where $P(\mathbf{k})$ is the so-called topography spectrum dependent on the topographic
 640 wavenumber in both horizontal directions. A correction to the Bell energy flux was
 641 considered by Nikurashin and Ferrari (2010b), since the linear theory only proved
 642 accurate until the ration

$$Fr = \frac{Nh_0}{|\mathbf{U}_0|} \approx 0.7$$

643 where h_0 is the amplitude of a sinusoidal topography. This ratio is called the
 644 inverse Froude Number and can be interpreted in several ways. First it represents
 645 the momentum, which a bottom mean flow must have in order to elevate a water
 646 parcel above a certain height, h_0 , in a given environment, N . The interpretation
 647 is such that if the flow is not sufficiently strong (or the abyssal hill is too high), the
 648 current will not be able to lift a water parcel above the topographic hill, and flow will
 649 simply be blocked or the water will flow around the hill rather than above it (Smith,
 650 1989). The ratio is also an approximation of the steepness of the topography relative
 651 to the ratio of the horizontal and the vertical wavenumbers. If we consider $f \ll$
 652 $U_0 k \ll N$

$$\frac{h_0/\lambda}{k/m} = \frac{h_0 k}{\sqrt{\frac{U_0^2 k^2 - f^2}{N^2 - U_0^2 k^2}}} \approx \frac{Nh_0}{U_0} \quad (2.26)$$

653 The interpretation of this is that lee waves are not allowed to travel at an angle
 654 (with respect to the horizontal) that is larger than topographic steepness; this steep-
 655 ness is referred to as the subcritical range. It is thus clear that the ratio Nh_0/k is
 656 important for lee wave characteristics. In a global estimate of the lee wave energy
 657 flux, it was introduced by Scott et al. (2011) as a simple limiter function (details ex-
 658 plained subsequently). Such a function effectively limits the height from which a
 659 topographic obstacle can generate lee waves (Sarkar and Scotti, 2017).

660 From the bottom energy flux, the aim is to derive an energy equation for lee
 661 waves, which will govern the evolution of lee wave energy in the model. The lee wave
 662 energy will therefore act as its own energy compartment in the model, but it will be
 663 linked with both the mean flow and the background internal wave energy domain.
 664 Separating the lee waves from the background internal waves can seem arbitrary,
 665 but considering that they are stationary waves with a frequency of encounter, $\omega_{enc} =$
 666 0 , it actually makes sense to treat them as a separate entity, because in this sense they
 667 are different from other types of internal gravity waves.

668 Besides the energy equation for the lee waves, we want to derive momentum
 669 fluxes to/from the mean flow and thereby link the lee waves to the momentum equa-
 670 tion. A special emphasis will also be put on the bottom energy flux and the way in
 671 which diapycnal diffusivity is coupled to the lee wave component.

2.3 Formulating an energy equation for lee waves

As mentioned, a geostrophic flow $\mathbf{U}_0 = \mathbf{U}|_{z=-H}$ over topographic features at the ocean floor generates lee waves with intrinsic frequency $\omega = -\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{k}$, vertical wavenumber $|m| = k\sqrt{N^2 - \omega^2}/\sqrt{\omega^2 - f^2}$, and vertical group velocity $\dot{z} = \sigma \frac{(\omega^2 - f^2)^{3/2}(N^2 - \omega^2)^{1/2}}{k^2|U_n|(N^2 - f^2)}$ (Olbers et al., 2012). Here $U_n = \mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{n}$, where $\mathbf{n} = (\cos(\phi), \sin(\phi))$ is the horizontal unit vector, signifies the alignment of the mean flow with the horizontal wave angle ϕ , and $\sigma = \text{sign}(m \cdot U_n)$

We express the energy contained in the waves as a density spectrum, which is given as $\mathcal{E}(m, k, \phi)$, where m and k are horizontal and vertical wavenumbers respectively, and ϕ is the propagation direction relative to true north. The energy density spectrum is governed by the radiative transfer equation (Olbers et al., 2012)

$$\partial_t \mathcal{E} + \partial_z(\dot{z}\mathcal{E}) + \partial_m(\dot{m}\mathcal{E}) = -(\dot{z}/\omega)\mathbf{k} \cdot (\partial_z \mathbf{U})\mathcal{E} + S \quad (2.27)$$

where $\dot{z} = \partial\omega/\partial m$ and $\dot{m} = -\partial_z\omega$ are the vertical group velocity and the refraction respectively. The first term on the right hand side represents wave-mean flow interaction (wave drag) and the S are all other sources and sinks of energy (e.g. forcing, dissipation and non-linear transfers of energy). The deductions made in the following section will use the definition of the vertical group velocity to obtain an expression for the wave mean flow interaction and thereby forming an energy equation. As is, however, the energy of the lee waves is dependent on both the vertical and horizontal wavenumber and the angle of propagation. In an ocean general circulation model this would of course be in addition to a dependency on the physical coordinates of the model constituting a total dependency on six variables. This would computationally extremely heavy and, although in itself interesting, an energy transfer in wavenumber space is not the scope of this study. Therefore we follow the derivation of Olbers and Eden (2013) to integrate the energy density over wavenumber (and later over angle) and split into up- and downward propagating waves, indicated by superscript \pm , defining

$$\epsilon^\pm(\phi) = \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty \max(\pm\sigma, 0)\mathcal{E}(m, k, \phi)\partial k\partial m \quad (2.28)$$

as the wavenumber-integrated energy. Such an integration leaves Eq. 2.27 as

$$\partial_t \epsilon^\pm + \partial_z(c^\pm \epsilon^\pm) = -\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{U} \Lambda^\pm \epsilon^\pm + \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty \max(\pm\sigma, 0) S \partial k \partial m \quad (2.29)$$

where the exchange with the mean flow is determined by the two so far unexplored parameters, Λ^\pm and c^\pm . We call Λ^\pm the mean flow exchange parameter. Using the relation $\omega = -kU_n$ this is defined as

2.4. SPECTRAL SHAPE, EXCHANGE PARAMETER AND VERTICAL GROUP VELOCITY

$$\Lambda^\pm(t, z, \phi) = \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty \max(\pm\sigma, 0) (\dot{z}/\omega) k \mathcal{E} \partial k \partial m / \epsilon^\pm \quad (2.30)$$

$$\Lambda^\pm(t, z, \phi) = -|U_n|^{-1} \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty \max(\pm\sigma, 0) \dot{z} \mathcal{E} \partial k \partial m / \epsilon^\pm \quad (2.31)$$

702 c^\pm is a wave energy-averaged vertical group velocity, which is given as

$$c^\pm(t, z, \phi) = \int_0^\infty \int_{-\infty}^\infty \max(\pm\sigma, 0) \dot{z} \mathcal{E} \partial k \partial m / \epsilon^\pm = -|U_n|^{-1} \sigma_U \Lambda^\pm$$

703 **2.4 Spectral shape, exchange parameter and vertical** 704 **group velocity**

705 We wish now, of course, to obtain suitable expressions for the mean flow exchange
706 parameter Λ and thereby also the vertical group velocity c . This will allow us to de-
707 termine the interaction between lee waves and the mean flow, given by the first term
708 on the right hand side of Eq. 2.29, and the vertical propagation of lee wave energy,
709 given by the second term on the left hand side. After this we only need to close the
710 energy equation by the source/sink term. In the above equations the rather compli-
711 cated formulation involving the max-function is necessary since $\sigma = \text{sign}(m \cdot U_n)$ not
712 only depends on the vertical wavenumber, but also the direction of the mean flow.
713 We assume in the model that the energy density anywhere in the water column stays
714 close to that generated at the bottom

$$\mathcal{E}(m, k, \phi) = A(k, \phi) (\epsilon^+(\phi) \delta(m - \sigma_U |m_{lee}|) + \epsilon^-(\phi) \delta(m + \sigma_U |m_{lee}|)) \quad (2.32)$$

715 where $A(k, \phi)$ is a shape function determined by the energy flux at the bottom
716 and is normalized such that Eq. 2.32 matches exactly the definition of Eq. 2.28.
717 This is an assumption which leaves out such phenomena as critical layers and wave
718 capture. Using this form and the definition of the vertical group velocity in Eq. 2.31
719 we get for the mean flow exchange parameter and the vertical group velocity

$$\Lambda^\pm(t, z, \phi) = \mp |U_n|^{-1} \sigma_U \int_0^\infty A |\dot{z}| \partial k, c^\pm = \pm \int_0^\infty A |\dot{z}| \partial k \quad (2.33)$$

720 where $\sigma_U = \text{sign}(U_n)$. So, the exchange of energy between the lee waves and
721 the mean flow is throughout the water column governed by the energy flux at the
722 bottom, and in order to formulate exchange term it is necessary (and sufficient) to
723 evaluate the integral $\int_k A |\dot{z}| \partial k$. In the case of lee waves the energy flux at the bottom
724 is given by Bell (1975) as

$$F_{bell}(k, \phi) = 4\pi^2 |U_n| (N^2 - k^2 U_n^2)^{1/2} (k^2 U_n^2 - f^2)^{1/2} L(Fr) F_{top}(k, \phi) \quad (2.34)$$

2.4. SPECTRAL SHAPE, EXCHANGE PARAMETER AND VERTICAL GROUP VELOCITY

725 The Bell energy flux is a function of wavenumber and direction of propagation.
 726 The factor $L(Fr)$ was introduced by Scott et al. (2011) to account for the increased
 727 blocking by topography in the case of large topographic heights or buoyancy or
 728 smaller velocities. The idea is, that in the case of such obstacles or flow properties,
 729 the water will to a larger extent flow around instead of over obstacles and thus gen-
 730 erate waves to a lesser extent. The factor is thus a function of the (inverse) Froude
 731 Number, $Fr^{-1} = HN/U$, that limits the energy flux derived by Bell (1975). It is de-
 732 fined as

$$L(Fr) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } Fr^{-1} \leq Fr_c^{-1} \\ \frac{Fr}{Fr_c} & \text{if } Fr^{-1} > Fr_c^{-1} \end{cases}$$

733 An appropriate value of the critical Froude Number Fr_c is examined in greater
 734 detail in Aguilar and Sutherland (2006), but here we will test two different values
 735 $Fr_c = 0.75$ and $Fr_c = 0.5$. The shape of the topographic spectrum F_{top} is given by
 736 Goff and Jordan (1988) and values of the parameters, which characterizes the spec-
 737 trum, by Goff (2010). The topographic spectrum takes the form

$$F_{top}(k, \phi) = \frac{h_{rms}^2 \nu}{\pi k_n k_s} k (1 + k^2/k_s^2 \cos^2(\phi - \phi_s) + k^2/k_n^2 \sin^2(\phi - \phi_s))^{-(\nu+1)} \quad (2.35)$$

738 and the defining parameters are the topographic wavenumbers in so-called
 739 strike and normal direction, k_s and k_n , the rms-height, h_{rms} , and the angle of orien-
 740 tation, ϕ_s . The Hurst number, ν , is in our case set to $\nu = 0.9$. The topographic spec-
 741 trum can be assumed isotropic, where $k_s = k_n$. This assumption simplifies both the
 742 deduction of the lee wave energy and momentum flux and the implementation in
 743 the model, since the dependence on ϕ vanishes because of the Pythagorean identity.
 744 With this assumption the topographic spectrum reduces to

$$F_{top,IS}(k) = \frac{h_{rms}^2 \nu}{\pi k_s^2} \frac{k}{(1 + k^2/k_s^2)^{\nu+1}} \quad (2.36)$$

745 The energy at the bottom is given by the flux

$$E_{bell}(k, \phi) = \frac{F_{bell}(k, \phi)}{\dot{z}} \quad (2.37)$$

746 and using Eq. 2.32 and 2.28 the shape function $A(k, \phi)$ takes the form

$$A(k, \phi) = E_{bell}(k, \phi) \left(\int_0^\infty E_{bell}(k, \phi) \partial k \right)^{-1} \quad (2.38)$$

747 With the isotropic topographic spectrum the shape function is then expressed as

2.4. SPECTRAL SHAPE, EXCHANGE PARAMETER AND VERTICAL GROUP VELOCITY

$$A(k, \phi) = \left(\frac{|U_n|}{N}\right)^{-2\nu} J^{-1} \frac{k^2 U_n^2}{k^2 U_n^2 - f^2 + r^2} k^{-2\nu-1}, J = \int_{|f|/N}^1 \frac{t^{-2\nu+1}}{t^2 - (f/N)^2 + (r/N)^2} \partial t$$

748 where the ϕ dependence enters via U_n . The r in the denominator is an artificial
 749 constant and is added to avoid singularity at $k^2 U_n^2 = f^2$, but note both that $r \ll f$
 750 and that the mean exchange parameter, Λ^\pm , is only weakly dependent on r . Using
 751 the definition of \dot{z} , this formulation of the shape function gives the mean exchange
 752 parameter

$$\Lambda^\pm = \mp |U_n|^{-1} \sigma \int_0^\infty A|\dot{z}|\partial k$$

$$\Lambda^\pm = \mp \sigma U \left(\frac{|U_n|}{N}\right)^{-2\nu} \frac{J^{-1}}{(N^2 - f^2)} \int_{|f|/|U_n|}^{N/|U_n|} (N^2 - k^2 U_n^2)^{1/2} (k^2 U_n^2 - f^2)^{1/2} k^{-2\nu-1} \partial k$$

753 where the boundaries of the integral has been set due to the expression $f \leq$
 754 $kU_n \leq N$. With the transformation $t = U_n k/N$ the integral can be converted into
 755 one which is independent on k (and ϕ) (see appendix)

$$\int_{|f|/|U_n|}^{N/|U_n|} (N^2 - k^2 U_n^2)^{1/2} (k^2 U_n^2 - f^2)^{1/2} k^{-2\nu-1} \partial k =$$

$$\left(\frac{N}{|U_n|}\right)^{-2\nu} N^2 \int_{|f|/N}^1 t^{-2\nu-1} (t^2 - f^2/N^2)^{1/2} (1 - t^2)^{1/2} \partial t$$

756 which gives the expression for the exchange parameter

$$\Lambda^\pm = \mp \sigma U \frac{N^2}{N^2 - f^2} \frac{I}{J} \quad (2.39)$$

757 where $I = \int_{|f|/N}^1 t^{-2\nu-1} (t^2 - f^2/N^2)^{1/2} (1 - t^2)^{1/2} \partial t$. Here it is also clear that the
 758 only angular dependency of Λ^\pm enters via σ_U . It is shown in the appendix of Eden
 759 et al., 2020 (under review) that suitable expression for I and J are

$$I \approx 0.65 \left(\frac{N}{f}\right)^\nu, J \approx \left(\frac{N}{f}\right)^{2\nu} \log(f/r)$$

760 If we assume for practical reasons $N^2 \gg f^2$ and $\nu = 1$, we obtain the final expres-
 761 sion for the exchange parameter, which enters Eq. 2.29

$$\Lambda^\pm = \mp \sigma_U \Lambda_0 \approx \mp 0.65 \sigma_U \frac{f}{N} \log(f/r) \quad (2.40)$$

762 where we have defined $\Lambda_0 = I/J$. This very neat expression for the mean ex-
 763 change parameter is only possible when using the isotropic topography spectrum,

2.5. FINALIZING THE ENERGY EQUATION

764 but it allows for a simple expression of the interaction between the mean flow and
 765 the lee waves given by the first term on the right hand side of Eq. 2.29. It also deter-
 766 mines the vertical group velocity

$$c^\pm = \pm |U_n| \Lambda_0 \quad (2.41)$$

767 which allows the deduction of an expression for the vertical propagation as given
 768 by the second term on the left hand side of the energy equation.

769 2.5 Finalizing the energy equation

770 We now need to finalize the energy Eq. 2.29 by calculating second term on the right
 771 hand side $\partial_z(c^\pm \epsilon^\pm)$ and the first term on the right hand side - the mean flow ex-
 772 change - given by $-\mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{U} \Lambda^\pm \epsilon^\pm$, and to close it by specifying the source/sink term.
 773 The energy contained in the lee waves is allowed to propagate, dissipate and ex-
 774 change energy with the background wave field (which is assumed to take a GM
 775 shape) and the mean flow. In order to obtain an expression for the total energy of
 776 the wave, we integrate Eq. 2.29 over angle as well

$$E_{lee}^\pm = \int \epsilon^\pm d\phi \quad (2.42)$$

777 The integral of the vertical propagation term over angle becomes $\int_0^{2\pi} c^\pm \epsilon^\pm d\phi$,
 778 and here we use the following approximation

$$\int_0^{2\pi} c^\pm \epsilon^\pm d\phi \approx \pm \frac{2}{\pi} \Lambda_0 \int_0^{2\pi} |\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{U}_0| d\phi \int_0^{2\pi} \epsilon^\pm d\phi = \pm \frac{2}{\pi} \Lambda_0 |\mathbf{U}_0| E_{lee}^\pm \quad (2.43)$$

779 Here we can define the angular integrated vertical group velocity $c_{lee} =$
 780 $2/\pi \Lambda_0 |\mathbf{U}_0|$, so that the approximation of the angular integrated vertical propagation
 781 term gives

$$\int_0^{2\pi} c^\pm \epsilon^\pm d\phi \approx \pm c_{lee} E_{lee}^\pm \quad (2.44)$$

782 The integration of the mean flow exchange over angle is thus similarly approxi-
 783 mated by

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \mathbf{n} \cdot \partial_z \mathbf{U} \Lambda^\pm \epsilon^\pm d\phi = \mp \Lambda_0 \partial_z \mathbf{U} \cdot \int_0^{2\pi} \mathbf{n} \sigma_U \epsilon^\pm d\phi \approx \mp \frac{2}{\pi} \Lambda_0 \frac{\mathbf{U}_0}{|\mathbf{U}_0|} \partial_z \mathbf{U} E_{lee}^\pm = \mp \mathbf{e}_{lee} \partial_z \mathbf{U} E_{lee}^\pm \quad (2.45)$$

784 where we have defined $\mathbf{e}_{lee} = 2/\pi \Lambda_0 \mathbf{U}_0 / |\mathbf{U}_0|$. This gives us final expression for
 785 the two terms in the lee wave energy equation representing vertical propagation and

2.6. PSEUDO-MOMENTUM FLUXES AND THE EFFECT ON THE MEAN FLOW

786 exchange with the mean flow. These are given in terms of the mean exchange pa-
 787 rameter Λ_0 and the vertical group velocity c_{lee} . The last thing we need is to formulate
 788 a closure for the source/sink term. Here we choose to include a symmetrization term
 789 with a tuneable timescale, and a term accounting for the interaction of the lee wave
 790 compartment with the background internal wave compartment. As mentioned, the
 791 separation of the lee wave compartment and the background internal wave com-
 792 partment is justified because of the different spectral shapes. This leaves us with a
 793 final equation governing the evolution of the lee wave energy of the form

$$\partial_t E_{lee}^{\pm} = \mp \partial_z (c_{lee} E_{lee}^{\pm}) \pm \tau_{lee}^{-1} E_{lee}^{\pm} \mp \frac{\tau_s^{-1}}{2} \Delta E_{lee} - \alpha_{ww} E_{GM} E_{lee}^{\pm} \quad (2.46)$$

794 Here ΔE is the energy difference between up- and downward propagating waves,
 795 $\tau_{lee}^{-1} = \mathbf{e}_{lee} \partial_z \mathbf{U}$ and τ_s are the wave drag and the vertical symmetrization time scales,
 796 respectively. The second term on the right hand side represents the interaction with
 797 the mean flow, while the third term on the right hand side represents the vertical
 798 symmetrization of up- and downward propagating waves. τ_{lee} is set in the model
 799 to 3 days, which is the same as the interior wave drag timescale of the background
 800 wave field. The last term on the right hand side represents the interaction between
 801 the background IW field, where

$$\alpha_{ww} = \mu_0 \frac{\text{arccosh}(N/f)|f|}{c_{\star}^2} = \mu_0 \frac{|f_e|}{c_{\star}^2} \quad (2.47)$$

802 is defined in Olbers and Eden (2013), and c_{\star} is related to the bandwidth of the GM
 803 spectrum and defined as

$$c_{\star} = \frac{1}{j_{\star} \pi} \int_h^0 N dz \quad (2.48)$$

804 The particular scaling given by α_{ww} is the parameterizations of induced diffu-
 805 sion and parametric subharmonic instability mechanisms described by McComas
 806 and Müller (1981).

807 **2.6 Pseudo-momentum fluxes and the effect on the** 808 **mean flow**

809 The waves also exert a drag on the mean momentum. It turns out, however, that
 810 using the residual momentum instead of the Eulerian momentum, it is possible to
 811 combine the vertical flux of momentum and the lateral buoyancy flux into a single
 812 term dubbed the pseudo-momentum flux.

813 Eden and Olbers (2017) showed how, in wavenumber space, the pseudo-
 814 momentum flux is given by

2.7. COUPLING TO THE INTERNAL WAVE COMPARTMENT

$$\tau = \overline{\mathbf{u}' w'} + \overline{\mathbf{u}' b' f N^{-2}} = \dot{z} \mathbf{k} \mathcal{E} / \omega$$

815 where the overline signifies an average over one entire wave period. Integration
816 over the allowed vertical and horizontal wavenumbers give

$$\mathbf{t}^{\pm}(\phi) = \int_0^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \dot{z} \mathbf{k} \mathcal{E} / \omega \partial m \partial m = \mathbf{n} \epsilon^{\pm} \Lambda^{\pm}$$

817 which is the angular dependent pseudo-momentum flux. Here we have used
818 the definition of Λ given by Eq. 2.31. In order to arrive at the full momentum flux
819 we then need to integrate over the propagation angle and sum over the two contri-
820 butions from the upward and downward waves. The dependence on ϕ of Λ is only
821 determined by $\text{sign}(U_n)$ and we therefore get the integral

$$\tau = \sum_{\pm} \int_0^{2\pi} \mathbf{t}^{\pm} \partial \phi = \sum_{\pm} \int_0^{\infty} \mathbf{n} \epsilon^{\pm} \Lambda^{\pm} \partial \phi$$

822 Using the same approximation as in Eq. 2.45 we then get.

$$\tau = -\mathbf{e}_{lee}(E_{lee}^+ - E_{lee}^-) = -\mathbf{e}_{lee} \Delta E_{lee} \quad (2.49)$$

823 The vertical divergence of the pseudo-momentum equation enters the mean
824 residual momentum equation, where it acts as an exchange term. However, the ex-
825 change can be in either direction dependent on the mean flow and difference in
826 energy of the upward- and downward propagating waves.

827 **2.7 Coupling to the internal wave compartment**

828 The parameters μ_0 and j_{\star} are tunable parameters in the model. The separation of
829 the lee wave energy and the background internal wave energy can seem somewhat
830 arbitrary, but the justification lies and the spectral shape of the two. Whereas the
831 internal wave energy spectrum is assumed to attain a GM-shape (an assumption
832 which is widely accepted in the literature, although arguments for regional devia-
833 tions are too (Polzin and Lvov, 2011)), the lee wave energy attains spectral shape
834 given by the Bell flux at the bottom (2.34).

835 The diapycnal diffusivity κ_{ρ} is calculated by IDEMIX according to equation 18
836 in Olbers and Eden (2013). The addition of lee waves to the model brings about an
837 exchange of energy between background internal wave field and the lee waves. This
838 exchange is represented by the fourth term on the right hand side of Eq. 2.46, where
839 a similar term is added to the general internal wave field. As such, at every grid point
840 and time step the internal wave energy, from which the diffusivity is calculated, will
841 thus receive a contribution from the lee wave field

2.8. BOTTOM BOUNDARY CONDITIONS AND ANISOTROPIC SPECTRUM

$$\partial_t E_{iw}^\pm = \dots + \alpha_{ww} E_{GM} E_{lee}^\pm$$

842 before any propagation and dissipation of energy is taken into account at said
 843 grid point. The rest of the terms governing the internal wave energy has here been
 844 left out to focus on the coupling with the lee wave model. Whereas the diapycnal
 845 diffusivity is directly proportional to the square of the internal wave energy, its de-
 846 pendency on the stability frequency is not as straightforward, since it involves the
 847 vertical integral over the stability frequency as given by c_\star in Eq. 2.48

$$\kappa_\rho \sim \frac{E_{iw}^2}{c_\star^2 N^2}$$

848 where E_{iw} is the total internal wave energy, i.e. the GM shape-assumed energy
 849 plus the contribution from the lee waves. In our model the lee waves therefore di-
 850 rectly affect both the mean momentum equation, the mean flow and the internal
 851 wave field, while they indirectly affect the diapycnal diffusivity.

852 **2.8 Bottom boundary conditions and anisotropic spec-** 853 **trum**

854 The bottom boundary conditions for the energy and (residual) momentum equation
 855 is given by the bottom energy flux and the bottom stress. The bottom energy flux
 856 F_{bell} given by equation 2.34 is integrated over k and ϕ to arrive at the bottom energy
 857 flux. Using the isotropic spectrum and the substitution $t = |U_n|k/N$, this can be
 858 written as

$$F_{bell}(\mathbf{x}, k, \phi) = 4\pi \frac{h_{rms}^2 N^3}{k_s} Lv \left(\frac{|U_n|k_s}{N} \right)^{2\nu+1} \frac{|U_n|}{N} \sqrt{1-t^2} \sqrt{t^2 - f^2/N^2} t^{-2\nu-1} \quad (2.50)$$

859 where $U_n = \mathbf{U} \cdot \mathbf{n}$. Here the dependence on k enters via t and the ϕ dependence
 860 via U_n . Integrated over k this gives

$$\int_{f/|U_n|}^{N/|U_n|} F_{bell} dk = 4\pi \frac{h_{rms}^2 N^3}{k_s} Lv \left(\frac{|U_n|k_s}{N} \right)^{2\nu+1} I \quad (2.51)$$

861 using the previously defined I . In order to arrive at the full bottom boundary
 862 condition for the energy flux the integration over ϕ gives

$$\int_{f/|U_n|}^{N/|U_n|} \int_0^{2\pi} F_{bell} d\phi dk = 8a\pi \frac{h_{rms}^2 N^3}{k_s} Lv \left(\frac{|U_n|k_s}{N} \right)^{2\nu+1} I \quad (2.52)$$

2.8. BOTTOM BOUNDARY CONDITIONS AND ANISOTROPIC SPECTRUM

863 where $a = \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \cos^{2\nu+1} \phi d\phi$ and takes values $\pi/2 < a < 4/3$ for $1/2 < \nu < 1$. In
 864 our model we choose $\nu = 0.8$ and $a = 4/3$. From the relation $\tau_{bell} \cdot \mathbf{U}_0 = -F_{bell}$ we are
 865 able to calculate the bottom stress as

$$\int_{f/|U_n|}^{N/|U_n|} \int_0^{2\pi} \tau_{bell} d\phi dk = -8a\pi \frac{h_{rms}^2 N^3}{k_s} Lv \frac{\mathbf{U}_0}{|\mathbf{U}_0|^2} \left(\frac{|U_n| k_s}{N} \right)^{2\nu+1} I \quad (2.53)$$

866 These two make up the bottom boundary conditions using the isotropic spec-
 867 trum. If the topographic spectrum is not assumed isotropic, i.e. k_s is in general
 868 not equal to k_n , the derivation leading to the very neat expression of the exchange
 869 parameter, Λ in Eq. 2.40 is not possible. Both the bottom lee wave flux and stress
 870 must therefore be calculated by numerically integrating over both wavenumber and
 871 propagation angle. They are in each case given by the boundary conditions at the
 872 bottom. The bottom energy flux (integrated over wavenumber and propagation an-
 873 gle) is added to the upward minus the downward energy propagation to form the
 874 bottom boundary condition for the energy. The bottom stress is still defined by 2.49
 875 and bottom flux and stress is thus calculated from

$$F_{bot}(x, y) = \int_k \int_\phi F_{bell} d\phi dk = \int_k \int_\phi 4\pi^2 U_n (N^2 - k^2 U_n^2)^{1/2} (k^2 U_n^2 - f^2)^{1/2} L(Fr) F_{top}(k, \phi) d\phi dk \quad (2.54)$$

$$\tau_{bot}(x, y) = \int_k \int_\phi \sigma_U \cdot \mathbf{n} F_{bell} \frac{1}{\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{U}_0} d\phi dk \quad (2.55)$$

876 where the topographic spectrum $F_{top}(k, \phi)$ is given by Eq. 2.35, and the vec-
 877 tor $\mathbf{n} = (\cos \phi, \sin \phi)$ such that it vanishes in when calculating the magnitude of the
 878 stress.

879 Chapter 3

880 Research Questions

881 As outlined in the previous chapter, lee waves are believed to have a significant im-
882 pact on ocean circulation via their contribution to vertical mixing and their interac-
883 tion with (and energy extraction from) the mean flow. Despite this, questions about
884 their role in this regard are still open (MacKinnon et al., 2017; Legg, 2021). Including
885 lee waves in an internal wave model will therefore facilitate an investigation into this
886 role. The current model implementation allows for an examination of the effect of
887 several parameter values on lee wave generation and their subsequent effect on the
888 ocean.

889 In the original IDEMIX model three intrinsic parameters needs to be specified
890 in order to finalize the diffusivity parameterization, μ_0 , j_* , and τ_v . The first two
891 determine the link between internal wave energy and diffusivity and the third set
892 the vertical decay scale of internal wave energy asymmetry. These three parameters
893 also determine the link between the background internal wave compartment and
894 lee wave compartment via the exchange coefficient α_{ww} , and as such also the effect
895 of lee waves on the diffusivity. Because of the uncertainty about the magnitude of
896 this effect in the real ocean (Waterman et al., 2013; Legg, 2021), this formulation is
897 still based on a theoretical approach rather than observational constraints. In other
898 words, more observational data is still needed to elucidate the route from lee wave
899 energy to turbulent mixing. Nevertheless, the formulation used here is based on pa-
900 rameterizations of the transfer of internal gravity wave energy in wavenumberspace
901 (Eden and Olbers (2014) and references therein), which have been evaluated against
902 ARGO-derived estimates of internal gravity wave energy with great success (Poll-
903 mann et al., 2017).

904 In the new lee wave compartment, described above, assuming the topography
905 isotropic leads to a simplified but approximated bottom energy flux. In the model
906 setup the topography spectrum can be set either as isotropic or anisotropic. The
907 value of the critical inverse Froude Number, Fr_C , is also specified in the setup al-
908 lowing two main parameters, which can be varied. The combined effects of the
909 different choices of IDEMIX parameters and lee wave approximations on both lee
910 wave generation itself and its subsequent role in shaping mean flow, diffusivity and
911 stratification are unknown, and a thorough investigation of these effects is therefore

912 needed to determine how the lee wave component should be set up in an actual
913 ocean general circulation model. The thesis will therefore analyze the effect of dif-
914 ferent choices of parameter values on these quantities.

915 As mentioned, several authors (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2010a; Scott et al., 2011;
916 Trossman et al., 2013; Wright et al., 2014) have estimated the bottom lee wave energy
917 flux with varying results. These studies differ in their use of bottom velocity and to-
918 pography data, but it applies for all of them, that all of them have *i)* used the isotropic
919 topography spectrum and *ii)* estimated the bottom flux as a non-integrated part
920 of an ocean model. To the author's knowledge no study on the effect of using the
921 anisotropic topography spectrum rather than the isotropic one has been carried out.
922 Furthermore, the lee waves are likely to be a part of feedback mechanisms (such as
923 lee waves extracting energy from and thus weakening the bottom flow, resulting less
924 available energy for the lee waves themselves), and an investigation of their effect on
925 the ocean state should therefore be done with them fully integrated in the model. We
926 have done this in IDEMIX.

927 If the generation and subsequent breaking of lee wave have a significant effect
928 on the mean flow and on vertical mixing, this would be relevant to include in long
929 term simulations as well. The hypothesized effect of lee waves on the overturning
930 circulation for example (Melet et al., 2014; De Lavergne et al., 2016) warrants consid-
931 eration of lee waves in representations of the overturning. But for long term simu-
932 lations coarser model resolution is preferred (for computation time purposes), and
933 the sensitivity of lee wave generation to model resolution is therefore also investi-
934 gated in this study. Because eddies have been suggested as a major contributor for
935 strong bottom flows needed to generate lee waves, it is likely that the ultimate aim
936 for coarse resolution models should be to include a lee wave energy flux parameter-
937 ized on the eddy kinetic energy. Comparisons between coarse and high resolution
938 models should help elucidate this topic.

939 Taking these factors into consideration this thesis will investigate lee wave gen-
940 eration and its effect on the mean flow, diffusivity and stratification. This will be
941 done using models with different resolution and with different choices of parame-
942 ter values using one specific model. The aim is to clarify the effect of model resolu-
943 tion on lee wave generation, and to determine what difference the choice of IDEMIX
944 parameter values and topography spectrum have on lee wave generation and sub-
945 sequently on the mean flow and diffusivity. Additional energy available for mixing
946 (the lee wave energy) should result in an increased diffusivity. The interconnected
947 effects of lee waves, mean flow, and stratification adds further complexity, and ren-
948 ders questions of where and by how much the mixing would increase in the different
949 experiments yet open. Key questions which the thesis will seek to answer are there-
950 fore

- 951 • What effect does model resolution have on lee wave generation?
- 952 • How sensitive is the lee wave generation to using an anisotropic topography
953 spectrum rather than an isotropic one, and what is the subsequent effect on
954 the mean flow, diffusivity and stratification?
- 955 • What effect does varying the critical inverse Froude Number have on these

3.1. MODELS AND EXPERIMENTAL SETUPS

956 quantities?

- 957 • How sensitive is the lee wave generation and the lee wave field to changes in
958 the IDEMIX parameters, μ_0 , j_* , and τ_ν ?
- 959 • To what extent is the lee wave field able to alter the background internal wave
960 field, and how does this fit with previous estimates of internal wave energy?
- 961 • How big of a role does the interaction with the mean flow and the interaction
962 with the background internal wave field play in shaping the lee wave field?
- 963 • To what extent is the implementation of the lee wave module in IDEMIX able
964 to explain the discrepancies between the observed dissipation and that pre-
965 dicted by lee wave theory in the Southern Ocean?
- 966 • How does the implementation of and the results from a lee wave compartment
967 in an internal wave model advance the research on the role of lee waves in the
968 ocean?

969 **3.1 Models and experimental setups**

970 In order to answer the above outlined research questions, IDEMIX is in this study
971 coupled to the ocean circulation model pyOM - a hydrostatic model in Boussinesq
972 approximation. This will facilitate an assessment of the implementation of a lee
973 wave compartment in IDEMIX. The strengths of pyOM lies in its energy consistency.
974 All forcing, dissipation and interaction between resolved motions and unresolved
975 parameterizations are accounted for in an energy budget, and as such energy of all
976 unresolved motions are carried as prognostic variables in the model to keep track of
977 the energy.

978 The energy budget contains dynamic and potential terms representing re-
979 versible and irreversible energy changes respectively. The mean kinetic energy is
980 forced by winds at the surface, and it has a constant sink of energy to a meso-scale
981 eddy domain via lateral friction and to an unresolved turbulent kinetic energy (TKE)
982 domain. The meso-scale eddy sink term is governed by the closure of Eden and
983 Greatbatch (2008) drawing upon Gent and McWilliams (1990), and the sink to the
984 TKE domain uses the parameterization of Gaspar et al. (1990). Subsequently the
985 eddy kinetic energy (EKE) has an energy sink to the internal gravity wave (IGW) do-
986 main (Eden and Olbers, 2014). The IGW domain is governed by IDEMIX, and this
987 is where the new lee wave compartment is added. The original version of IDEMIX
988 is forced by an energy flux from barotropic tides from Jayne (2009) at the bottom
989 and at the surface by an energy flux from the mixed layer into the interior in the
990 near-inertial band, i.e. wind-forcing, from Rimac et al. (2013). IDEMIX contains
991 an energy sink to the TKE domain, which therefore has sources from both the in-
992 ternal wave domain and from the mean field. Additionally there is an irreversible
993 energy exchange from the TKE domain to the potential energy domain, which ac-
994 counts for heat gain. An overview of this structure of energy stocks and flows is
995 useful for understanding the implementation of lee waves in IDEMIX. Although the

3.1. MODELS AND EXPERIMENTAL SETUPS

996 lee waves are implemented within IDEMIX, they constitute an energy compartment
997 of its own linked with the mean flow and with the background internal wave field
998 ('background' here meaning the internal wave field present prior to including lee
999 waves) as determined by Eq. 2.46. Such an overview also helps to understand how
1000 a possible parameterization of lee wave energy would function in the model. If the
1001 lee wave energy is deemed to originate almost exclusively from eddies, a parameter-
1002 ized lee wave field would draw its energy from the meso-scale eddy field, whereas if
1003 the eddies were to play only a small part in lee wave generation, the energy would
1004 largely stem from the mean kinetic energy.

1005 As a first consideration to investigate the effect of lee waves on the ocean state
1006 is the horizontal resolution of the model being used. The resolution could very well
1007 have an influence on the lee wave generation, since eddies have been reported to be
1008 of great importance in lee wave generation (Marshall and Naveira Garabato, 2008;
1009 Nikurashin et al., 2013). An eddy-resolving model could therefore naturally be as-
1010 sumed to have a higher lee wave energy flux than both an eddy-permitting and a
1011 coarse resolution model. Furthermore, Hogan and Hurlburt (2000) finds a signifi-
1012 cant increase in bottom velocity with an increasing model resolution. With the cur-
1013 rent formulation this also suggest a stronger lee wave generation in a higher reso-
1014 lution model. To test the effect of resolution on lee wave generation two different
1015 setups of pyOM have been used; first the global 2° horizontal resolution setup, origi-
1016 nally based on the MITgcm, with the vertical dimension converted from 30 to 45
1017 layers, and secondly the $1/3^\circ$ horizontal resolution FLAME (Family of Linked At-
1018 lantic Model Experiments) setup of the North and tropical Atlantic spanning from
1019 18°S to 70°N and has open boundaries at the northern and southern boundaries,
1020 and the same 45 vertical layers. While the 2° global model does not capture eddy
1021 characteristics at all, the $1/3^\circ$ would be considered eddy-permitting, i.e. capturing
1022 some but not all of the eddy characteristics. The vertical grid spacing is 10m at the
1023 surface increasing to 250m below 2000m depth.

1024 The main investigation, however, is carried out in the $1/12^\circ$ FLAME setup. As
1025 opposed to the eddy-permitting setup, this would (by and large) be considered eddy-
1026 resolving. The vertical structure remains the same.

1027 The model was first run 10 years spin-up without the lee wave module. After
1028 these 10 years the lee wave module was switched on with four different settings
1029 specified by the isotropic/anisotropic topographic spectrum and the critical Froude
1030 Number set to either $Fr_c = 0.75$ or $Fr_c = 0.5$. For these four different settings the
1031 IDEMIX parameters $j_\star = 10$, $\tau_\nu = 3$ days, $\mu_0 = 4/3$ were taken from Olbers and Eden
1032 (2013). A fifth and sixth experiment with the IDEMIX parameters found in Poll-
1033 mann et al. (2017) ($j_\star = 5$, $\tau_\nu = 2$ days, $\mu_0 = 1/3$) was used with the isotropic and
1034 anisotropic spectrum and both with $Fr_c = 0.75$. Thus we have four topography pa-
1035 rameter and two IDEMIX parameter sensitivity experiments using the $1/12^\circ$ model;
1036 one experiment using the isotropic topography spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$ on the
1037 same model domain but with a coarser horizontal resolution of $1/3^\circ$; and one last
1038 experiment also using isotropic topography and $Fr_c = 0.75$ but using a global model
1039 in a decidedly coarse horizontal resolution of 2° . These last runs using coarser res-
1040 olution will not be examined in depth, but mostly serve as a validation of the clear

3.1. MODELS AND EXPERIMENTAL SETUPS

1041 hypothesis that the lee wave generation should increase with resolution. The first six
1042 experiments are

- 1043 • I075, using the isotropic topography spectrum and a critical inverse Froude
1044 Number $Fr_c = 0.75$. When differences between the simulation *with* lee waves
1045 are discussed, this experiment will be used as a base experiment
- 1046 • I05, using the isotropic topography spectrum and critical inverse Froude
1047 Number $Fr_c = 0.5$
- 1048 • A075, using the anisotropic topography spectrum and critical inverse Froude
1049 Number $Fr_c = 0.75$
- 1050 • A05, using the anisotropic topography spectrum and critical inverse Froude
1051 Number $Fr_c = 0.5$
- 1052 • P17I, using the isotropic topography spectrum, critical inverse Froude Number
1053 $Fr_c = 0.75$, and IDEMIX parameters found by Pollmann et al. (2017)
- 1054 • P17A, using the anisotropic topography spectrum, critical inverse Froude Num-
1055 ber $Fr_c = 0.75$, and IDEMIX parameters found by Pollmann et al. (2017)
- 1056 • $1/3^\circ$, using isotropic topography spectrum and critical inverse Froude num-
1057 ber of $Fr_c = 0.75$ on the $1/3^\circ$ setup
- 1058 • 2° , using isotropic topography spectrum and critical inverse Froude number
1059 of $Fr_c = 0.75$ on the 2° setup

1060 After the 10 year spinup the model was subsequently run for one year in each
1061 of the experiments. Additionally, one control run was made without the lee wave
1062 module. Common for all of the experiments including lee waves is that they use the
1063 topography data of Goff (2010). The data is based on satellite altimetry measure-
1064 ments and spans the entire globe, but in Fig. 3.1 it has been interpolated onto the
1065 model grid.

1066 Four different topographic parameters are necessary to calculate the lee wave
1067 energy flux at the bottom if the full anisotropic spectrum is used. These are the root-
1068 mean-square height of the abyssal hills showed in the *upper left panel*. The height
1069 of the abyssal hills are large in the central subtropical Atlantic but also along the Mid
1070 Atlantic Ridge. Since the bottom energy scales as $F_{bell} \sim h_{rms}^2$, the geographical dis-
1071 tribution is very much dependent on h_{rms} . The orientation angle, ϕ , showed in the
1072 *upper right panel* is mostly important for the directional distribution of lee wave en-
1073 ergy. Since the lee wave energy is in this study integrated over propagation angle, the
1074 orientation angle should not be particularly important for the lee wave generation,
1075 but it is nonetheless a necessary parameter in the anisotropic topography spectrum.
1076 The topographic wavenumber in the strike direction, k_s , is showed in the *bottom left*
1077 *panel* and the topographic wavenumber in the normal direction, k_n is showed in the
1078 *bottom right panel*. In general $k_n > k_s$. If the topography is assumed isotropic, we
1079 set $k_n = k_s$ and only h_{rms} and k_s is used to calculate the bottom energy flux.

3.1. MODELS AND EXPERIMENTAL SETUPS

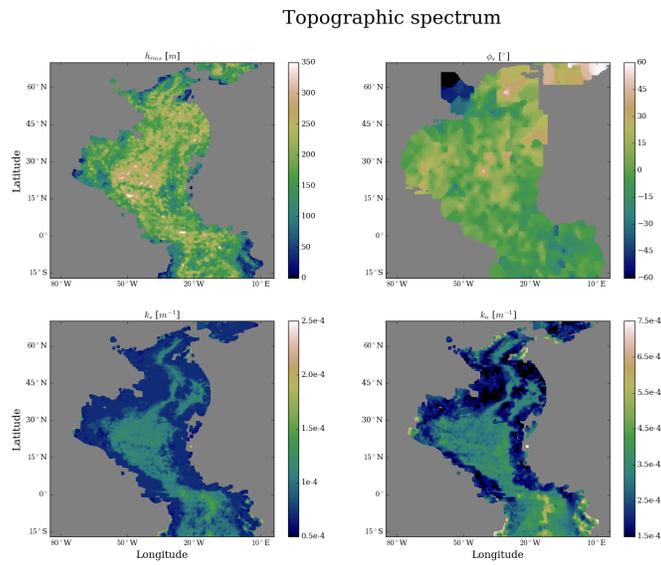


Figure 3.1: The four parameters of the topographic spectrum; *upper left* shows the root-mean-square topographic height, h_{rms} , in meters, *upper right* shows the strike-angle, ϕ_s in degrees, *bottom left* shows topographic wavenumber in strike direction k_s and *bottom right* shows the topographic wavenumber normal to the strike direction, k_n . Both *bottom left* and *bottom right* are in units of $1/m$, but take notice of the different colorbar range. In general $k_n > k_s$.

1080 Chapter 4

1081 Sensitivity to model resolution

1082 The purpose of comparing results from models with different horizontal (and ver-
1083 tical) resolution is to shed light on the effect of model resolution on the magnitude
1084 and also distribution of lee wave generation. The major issue in this regard is the
1085 importance of the eddy field in contrast to the mean flow. It is still an open question
1086 to what extent the lee wave generation is caused mostly by deep reaching eddies or
1087 by the mean flow.

1088 4.1 Comparison of two global models

1089 Two experiments on global ocean models were carried out; one model setup using
1090 an eddy resolving horizontal resolution of $1/10^\circ$ and one using a coarse horizontal
1091 resolution of 2° . Both model runs have used the isotropic topography spectrum and
1092 a critical inverse Froude Number of $Fr_c = 0.75$.

1093 The lee wave energy flux at the bottom (*left panel*) and the bottom speed (*right*
1094 *panel*) from the 2° model is plotted in figure 4.1. The lee wave energy flux is between
1095 10^{-6} and $10^{-5} W/m^2$ many areas in the Southern Ocean, tropical Atlantic and cen-
1096 tral Pacific. In many parts of the midlatitude and northern Pacific, in the midlatitude
1097 and western Atlantic, and in the eastern Pacific (from roughly $90^\circ E$ to $135^\circ E$), how-
1098 ever, the magnitude is below $10^{-7} W/m^2$. The lee energy flux coincide well with the
1099 bottom flow, which exhibits its largest magnitude in the Southern Ocean at around
1100 $0.1 m/s$. As already mentioned eddy structures are not visible in neither the bottom
1101 speed nor the energy flux.

1102 The same quantities are shown for the $1/10^\circ$ global model in Fig. 4.2. First of all,
1103 both the energy flux and the bottom speed is larger compared to that of the 2° model,
1104 the energy even by an entire order of magnitude in many regions (notice the scale on
1105 the colorbar). The energy flux is largest in the midlatitude and northern Atlantic and
1106 in the Southern Ocean with values around $10^{-4} W/m^2$; that in the Atlantic is in stark
1107 contrast to the energy flux in the 2° model with a difference of up to four orders of
1108 magnitude. Also the eastern part of the Southern Ocean has an energy flux between
1109 10^{-5} and $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in most areas, which is also between two and three orders of

4.1. COMPARISON OF TWO GLOBAL MODELS

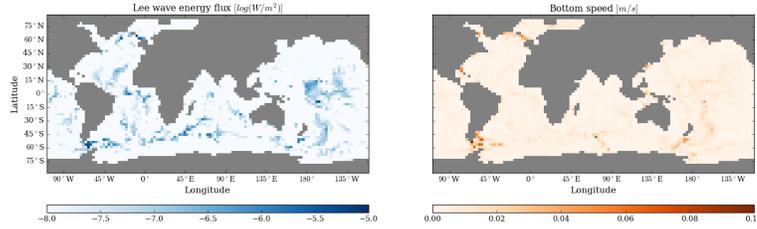


Figure 4.1: *Left panel* shows the bottom lee wave energy flux from the 2° global model. The flux is largest in the Southern Ocean and tropical Atlantic, where it reaches magnitudes between 10^{-6} and $10^{-5} W/m^2$. In the midlatitude Atlantic and Eastern Pacific magnitudes are often below 10^{-7} . *Right panel* shows the bottom speed from the 2° global model. The strongest bottom flows occur in the Southern Ocean near Drake Passage with speeds close to $0.1 m/s$.

1110 magnitude larger than that of the 2° model.

1111 The bottom speed in these regions is between 0.1 and $0.2 m/s$. In the case of
 1112 the North Atlantic this is more than an order of magnitude larger than the 2° model.
 1113 Since values are averages over a year of simulation, single eddies do not clearly stand
 1114 out, although an eddy field is clearly visible in both the Southern Ocean, Atlantic and
 1115 Pacific Ocean. The bottom speed is in many regions twice as larger as that in the 2°
 1116 model, and there is a visible correlation between the strong bottom flow and the lee
 1117 wave energy flux in the Atlantic and in the eastern part of the Southern Ocean.

1118 Fig. 4.1 and fig. 4.2 reveal that the discrepancy between the energy flux in the
 1119 high- and the coarse resolution model is two-fold. First of all, the energy flux in the
 1120 coarse resolution model is in general an order of magnitude lower in most regions.
 1121 This goes for regions of both relatively low and high energy flux. Second of all, there
 1122 are a few regions where the energy flux is several orders of magnitude larger in the
 1123 high resolution model - the eastern part of the Southern Ocean and the midlatitude
 1124 Atlantic are the most prominent examples. These are also regions in which the bot-
 1125 tom flow is significantly larger in the high resolution model and which are charac-
 1126 terized by a vigorous eddy field. As such, both the distribution and and magnitude
 1127 of lee wave energy flux is significantly different in the high resolution model than in
 1128 the coarse resolution model, and the difference is likely to linked with larger bottom
 1129 velocities linked with the eddy field.

1130 Integrated over the entire model domain the lee wave energy flux amounts to
 1131 $F_{glob} = \int_x \int_y F_{bell} \partial x \partial y = 0.0114 TW$ in the 2° model and $F_{glob} = 0.262 TW$ in the
 1132 $1/10^\circ$ model, i.e. more than an order of magnitude larger. This result from the $1/10^\circ$
 1133 resolution model is similar to what other studies of lee wave generation has found
 1134 (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2010a; Scott et al., 2011; Trossman et al., 2013; Wright et al.,
 1135 2014).

4.1. COMPARISON OF TWO GLOBAL MODELS

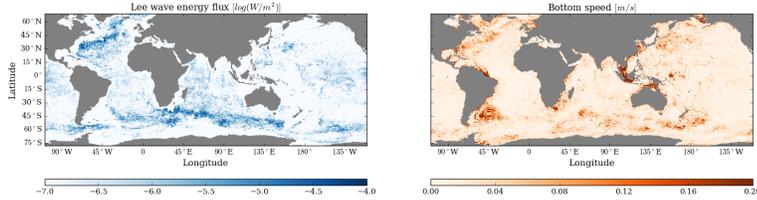


Figure 4.2: *Left panel* shows the bottom lee wave energy flux from the $1/10^\circ$ global model. The flux is largest in the North Atlantic and in the Southern Ocean. Values here are roughly $10^{-4} W/m^2$. *Right panel* shows the bottom speed from the $1/10^\circ$ global model. The strongest bottom flows occur in the Southern Ocean near Drake Passage with speeds close to $0.1 m/s$.

1136 The vertically integrated lee wave energy for both global models is plotted in Fig.
 1137 4.3, where *left panel* shows that of the 2° model and *right panel* shows that of the
 1138 $1/10^\circ$ model.

1139 In the 2° model the tropical Atlantic and Pacific stands out with vertically inte-
 1140 grated lee wave energy of $10^1 m^3/s^2$. The Southern Ocean and the northern Atlantic
 1141 has a vertically integrated lee wave energy of one or two orders of magnitude lower,
 1142 which is contrasted to the energy flux, where these regions show the largest magni-
 1143 tudes. The energy thus to a higher degree tends to accumulate in the tropics than in
 1144 the high latitudes in the 2° model. This image is not mirrored in the high resolution
 1145 model. Here the midlatitude and northern Atlantic stand out with an vertically inte-
 1146 grated energy of $10^2 m^3/s^2$, while the Southern Ocean shows magnitudes between
 1147 10^1 and $10^2 m^3/s^2$. There is no larger accumulation in the tropics than in the high
 1148 latitudes. In comparison the energy in the tropical Atlantic and Pacific are of similar,
 1149 or at least comparable, magnitude in the two models (the energy in the tropical In-
 1150 dian Ocean remains larger in the high resolution model). The image of a difference
 1151 in the distribution of the lee wave energy flux between the two models is thus some-
 1152 what distorted, when it comes to the vertically integrated lee wave energy. Here the
 1153 difference between the two models is even larger in the high latitudes, whereas the
 1154 difference in the tropics is reduced.

1155 Since the amount of lee wave energy depends on the balance between the energy
 1156 flux at the bottom and the energy transfers away from the lee wave field (the energy
 1157 transfer to the mean field and to the background internal wave field), as specified
 1158 by Eq. 2.46 (where the transfer between up and downward propagating energy can-
 1159 cels out in the total energy), the large differences in vertically integrated energy the
 1160 two models in between is not a given, even though the energy flux is larger in the
 1161 high resolution model. The energy exchange with the mean flow can have either
 1162 sign (from the lee wave energy field to the mean flow and vice versa), whereas the

4.1. COMPARISON OF TWO GLOBAL MODELS

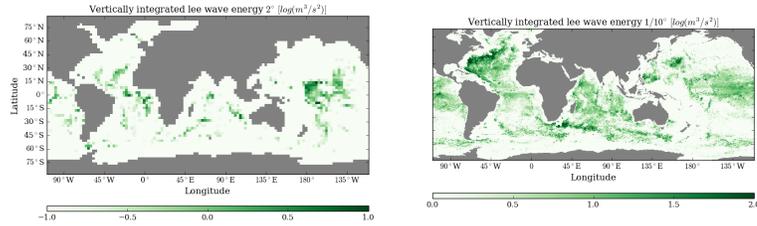


Figure 4.3: *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy from the 2° model. The energy is largest in the tropical Atlantic and Pacific, where values reach $10^1 m^3/s^2$. In most other regions the lee wave energy is two orders of magnitude lower than that. Compared to the energy flux itself, the energy tends to accumulate more in the tropical regions than in the mid- and high latitudes *Right panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy from the $1/10^\circ$ model. Contrary to the energy flux the largest energy levels are found in the Atlantic along the North Atlantic Current with values of $10^2 m^3/s^2$. In the high latitudes the energy is at least three orders of magnitude larger than that of the 2° model, whereas the energy levels in the tropical Atlantic and Pacific are of similar magnitude. Notice that the different panel sizes are due to different data dimension and are chosen so as not to distort these dimensions.

1163 energy exchange with the background internal wave field is only in one direction.
 1164 The energy transfer to the background internal wave field have shown to be the far
 1165 largest of these two, and is therefore shown for both models in Fig. 4.4.

1166 In the 2° model the internal wave energy transfer remains very localized with
 1167 magnitudes of $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$ in around the Drake Passage. The overflow regions be-
 1168 tween the Norwegian Sea and the Atlantic along with the coastal region of western
 1169 South America also show hightened values, but almost every other region shows
 1170 values two orders of magnitude lower. In contrast the $1/10^\circ$ model shows the high-
 1171 est internal wave energy transfers in the midlatitude and North Atlantic and in the
 1172 Southern Ocean with transfers of $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$. These regions of high energy trans-
 1173 fer clearly follow the North Atlantic Current and the Antarctic Circumpolar Current
 1174 (ACC), as opposed to the localized areas of high energy transfer shown by the 2°
 1175 model. As such, both the magnitude and the distribution of this energy transfer is
 1176 thus very different between the models. It is worth noticing that in both cases the
 1177 the energy transfer does not necessarily show the same distributional pattern as the
 1178 lee wave energy field itself. In both models the magnitude of the lee wave energy it-
 1179 self in tropical regions is comparable to that in the mid- and high latitudes, whereas
 1180 regarding the energy transfer magnitudes are far larger in mid- and high latitudes
 1181 than in tropical regions.

4.1. COMPARISON OF TWO GLOBAL MODELS

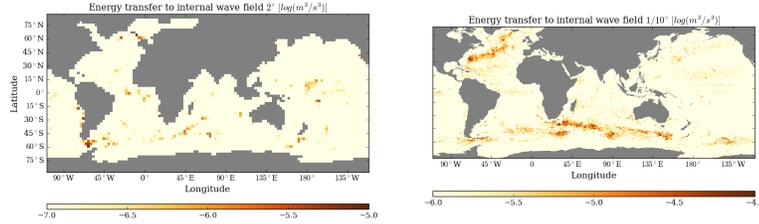


Figure 4.4: *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated energy transfer from the lee wave field to the background internal wave field in the 2° model. The largest energy transfer of $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$ is found around the Drake Passage. *Right panel* shows the same transfer for the $1/10^\circ$ model. In the high resolution model the large energy transfer of magnitudes $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$ clearly follow the North Atlantic Current and the ACC, where in the coarse resolution model the energy transfer is more localized. In both models mid- and high latitudes show much larger energy transfer than tropical regions.

1182 4.1.1 Conclusion on the comparison of coarse and high resolution 1183 models

1184 Overall there are few similarities and many differences in lee wave generation and
1185 dissipation between the coarse 2° resolution model and the high $1/10^\circ$ resolution
1186 model. The bottom speed is in general at least twice as large in the high- than
1187 in the coarse resolution model, and large values also appear more localized in the
1188 coarse resolution model. The magnitude of both the energy flux, the vertically in-
1189 tegrated lee wave energy field, and the energy transfer from lee waves to the back-
1190 ground internal wave field are an order of magnitude or more lower in the coarse
1191 resolution model than in the high resolution model. This is well illustrated by the
1192 globally integrated energy flux of $F_{glob} = 0.274 TW$ in the coarse resolution model
1193 and $F_{glob} = 0.0114 TW$ in the high resolution model, i.e. an increase by a factor of
1194 roughly 25. There are also differences between the models in the distribution of
1195 these quantities. Most noticeable in this regard is the lack of energy and energy flux
1196 and transfers in the mid- and northern Atlantic and the eastern part of the Southern
1197 Ocean in the 2° model. These are some of the most energetic regions in the high
1198 resolution model. Furthermore, they show bottom speeds of 0.1 to $0.15 m/s$ in the
1199 high resolution and only 0.01 - $0.02 m/s$ in the coarse resolution model, which also
1200 have clear signs of an eddy signal. It is thus concluded that the eddies generated
1201 in the North Atlantic Current and in the ACC have a significant impact on lee wave
1202 generation. As such, it is a stronger bottom flow and in particular the coincidence
1203 of strong bottom flow associated with eddies with rough bottom topography in the
1204 $1/10^\circ$ model, which generates a much stronger lee wave field. The tropical Atlantic

4.2. COMPARISON OF AN EDDY-RESOLVING AND AN EDDY-PERMITTING REGIONAL MODEL

1205 and Pacific, on the other hand, exhibits a lee wave energy flux which is comparable
1206 in magnitude in the two models. Another similarity in the two models is that the
1207 lee wave energy tends to accumulate more in the tropical regions than in the high
1208 latitudes.

1209 If we take the impact of resolving eddies to increase the lee wave generation 25
1210 times (although this cannot be concluded from the current analysis, since changes
1211 in mean flow, buoyancy stratification, and even in the interpolation of topography
1212 data onto the coarse resolution grid can also have an impact on lee wave genera-
1213 tion), it is thus clear that a parameterized lee wave energy flux should be based to a
1214 very large extent on the eddy kinetic energy. A further analysis of the consequences
1215 of such a parameterization is not the scope of this study, but for elucidating the issue
1216 of the impact of lee waves on the overturning circulation for instance (where coarse
1217 resolution models are widely used, because of a lower computation time), it should
1218 be considered.

1219 **4.2 Comparison of an eddy-resolving and an eddy-** 1220 **permitting regional model**

1221 The regional FLAME model of the North Atlantic basin was used in two different set-
1222 ups; one being eddy-permitting with a horizontal resolution of $1/3^\circ$ and one being
1223 eddy-resolving with a horizontal resolution of $1/12^\circ$ (this setup will also be used to
1224 test the sensitivity to the lee wave and IDEMIX parameters, but this will be covered
1225 in chapter 3). Both setups have been used with the isotropic topography spectrum
1226 and a critical inverse Froude Number $Fr_c = 0.75$ in this investigation. The bottom
1227 lee wave flux (*left panel*) and the bottom speed (*right panel*) from the $1/3^\circ$ experi-
1228 ments is shown in figure 4.5. The energy flux is largest in the Denmark Strait where it
1229 reaches $10^{-4} W/m^2$. A few areas in the midlatitude north Atlantic shows magnitudes
1230 of $10^{-5} W/m^2$, but besides this most areas have magnitudes of $10^{-6} W/m^2$ or lower.
1231 The bottom speed reaches $0.1 m/s$ in many coastal seas, but in the central Atlantic it
1232 is mostly below $0.02 m/s$. Some eddy activity along the North Atlantic Current is no-
1233 ticeable, but the translation of these into lee wave generation is minor compared to
1234 that in the Denmark Strait. In understanding the translation from bottom speed to
1235 the energy flux it needs to be mentioned, that lee wave generation in many coastal
1236 regions is inhibited because of the lack of topography data here. This is the reason
1237 why many coastal regions with strong bottom flows do not exhibit any lee wave gen-
1238 eration. The lack of topography data can either be caused by heavy sedimentation
1239 smoothing out the ocean floor, or it can be caused by a limitation in the measuring
1240 method (or a combination of the two) (Goff, 2010). The total energy flux integrated
1241 over the entire model domain is $F_{glob} = 0.0117 TW$ in the $1/3^\circ$ model.

1242 The same quantities are shown in Fig. 4.6 from the base experiment of the $1/12^\circ$
1243 model. The energy flux (*left panel*) remains larger than $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in the Denmark
1244 Strait, but the magnitudes in the central, western and northern part of the Atlantic
1245 are here also between 10^{-4} and $10^{-5} W/m^2$, i.e. at least an order of magnitude and in
1246 many areas close to two orders of magnitude larger than in the $1/3^\circ$ model. Only in

4.2. COMPARISON OF AN EDDY-RESOLVING AND AN EDDY-PERMITTING REGIONAL MODEL

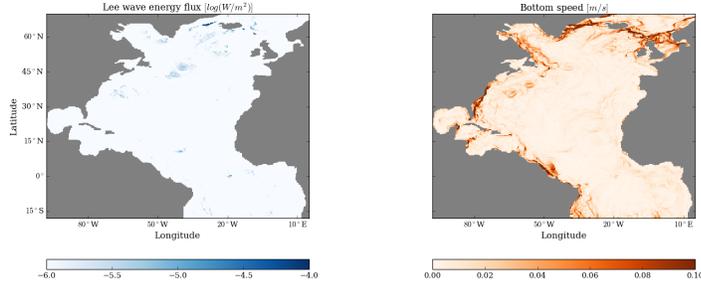


Figure 4.5: *Right panel* shows the bottom energy flux from the $1/3^\circ$ model. The energy flux reaches $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in the Denmark Strait, but in the central Atlantic it remains at least one order of magnitude lower. *Left panel* shows the bottom speed from the $1/3^\circ$ model. The bottom speed reaches $0.1 m/s$ in many coastal regions, but in the central Atlantic it is mostly below $0.2 m/s$. Some eddy activity is seen in the western Atlantic, which is also translated into lee wave generation, but the magnitude is small compared to that in the Denmark Strait.

1247 the subtropical and in tropical Atlantic is the energy flux around $10^{-6} W/m^2$, which
 1248 were common in the $1/3^\circ$ model. The bottom speed (*right panel*) is also substan-
 1249 tially higher than in the $1/3^\circ$ model. Magnitudes of $0.1 m/s$ is simulated in many
 1250 areas in the midlatitudes particularly along the North Atlantic Current and in the
 1251 Western and northern Atlantic. Here the bottom speed also bears a characteristic
 1252 eddying shape signifying a strong eddy field. Bear in mind here, that the colorbar
 1253 range has been chosen so as to highlight differences in the central Atlantic rather
 1254 than in coastal regions, where lee wave generation is inhibited nonetheless. As such,
 1255 bottom speeds in coastal areas are larger than the maximum showed on the colorbar
 1256 range. The integrated energy flux in the $1/12^\circ$ model amounts to $F_{glob} = 0.0628 TW$.
 1257 This is roughly six times larger than that in the $1/3^\circ$ model. It shows well, that in
 1258 many regions the energy flux is about an order of magnitude in the eddy-resolving
 1259 model. These regions coincide very well with those which exhibit a bottom flow
 1260 bearing a significant eddy signature. Despite a large difference in energy flux be-
 1261 tween the two models, this ratio of the two (globally integrated) energy flux is not
 1262 nearly as large as that of the two energy fluxes from the $1/10^\circ$ and 2° global models.

1263 As was the case with the two global models, the vertically integrated lee wave
 1264 energy field is shown for both the $1/12^\circ$ and the $1/3^\circ$ model in figure 4.7. In the $1/3^\circ$
 1265 model (*left panel*) the vertically integrated lee wave energy reaches $10^2 m^3/s^2$ in a
 1266 few areas in the subtropical and tropical Atlantic, whereas the western midlatitude
 1267 Atlantic also shows significant lee wave energy. The energy thus accumulate a lot
 1268 more in the tropical and subtropical regions, than in the midlatitudes, where the
 1269 generation of lee waves is larger. In contrast the $1/12^\circ$ model exhibits a much larger
 1270 accumulation of lee wave energy in the western and central part of the Atlantic, but
 1271 a much lower accumulation in the tropical Atlantic. The magnitudes of vertically

4.3. FINAL CONCLUSIONS ON THE RESOLUTION SENSITIVITY

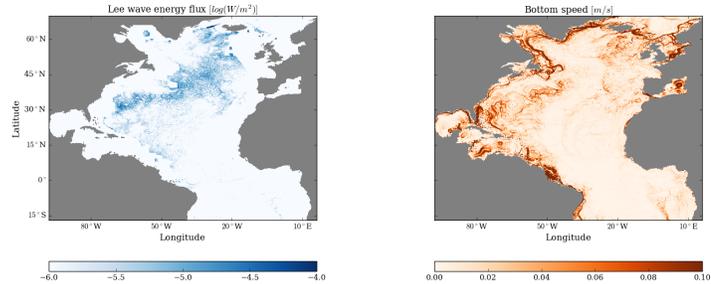


Figure 4.6: *Left panel* shows the energy flux from the base experiment using the $1/12^\circ$ regional FLAME model. The energy flux reaches a magnitude larger than $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in the Denmark Strait and larger than $10^{-5} W/m^2$ in many areas in the midlatitude western, central and northern Atlantic. *Right panel* shows the bottom speed from the same experiment. Magnitudes between 0.05 and $0.1 m/s$ is not uncommon in many parts of the western and northern Atlantic. The bottom speed bears a significant eddying signature along the North Atlantic Current.

1272 integrated lee wave energy which reached in the two models is actually quite similar,
1273 but the distribution of lee wave energy is very different. As was the case with the
1274 two global models, though, relative to the energy flux the accumulation of energy is
1275 larger in the tropics than in mid- and high latitude; the vertically integrated energy
1276 is shifted equator-ward compared to the bottom energy flux.

1277 The energy transfer from the lee wave field to the background internal wave field
1278 is shown for both regional models in figure 4.8. The energy transfer is in both mod-
1279 els largest in the Denmark Strait, where it reaches $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$. In the $1/3^\circ$ model
1280 (*left panel*), however, the energy transfer does not exceed $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$ in many other
1281 parts of the Atlantic. As with the bottom energy flux, this is in stark contrast to the
1282 $1/12^\circ$ model, where much of the midlatitudes exhibit energy transfers larger than
1283 $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$. There seems to be an almost one-to-one correlation between the bot-
1284 tom energy flux and the energy transfer in both models.

1285 4.3 Final conclusions on the resolution sensitivity

1286 The most important difference between the eddy-permitting $1/3^\circ$ and the eddy-
1287 resolving $1/12^\circ$ model setup, in terms of lee generation, energy and dissipation, is
1288 the amount lee wave energy generated (and thus also dissipated) in along the North
1289 Atlantic Current. Here the magnitude of the energy flux is almost everywhere at
1290 least an order of magnitude larger in the eddy-resolving model than in the eddy-
1291 permitting one. Although traces of eddy activity is visible in the bottom speed of the
1292 $1/3^\circ$ model, the eddy signature is much more apparent and the bottom speed much
1293 larger in this region in the $1/12^\circ$ model. Whereas the the two global models exhib-

4.3. FINAL CONCLUSIONS ON THE RESOLUTION SENSITIVITY

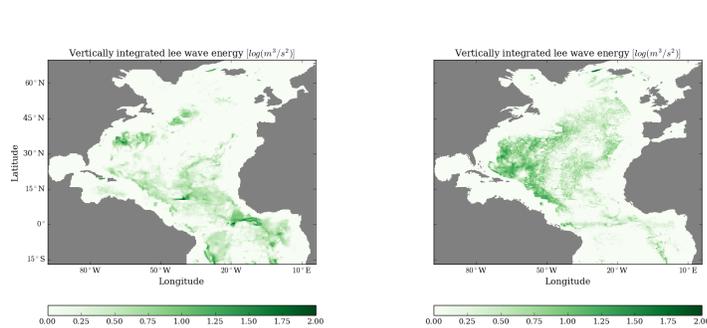


Figure 4.7: *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy from the $1/3^\circ$ model. Lee wave energy reaches $10^2 m^3/s^2$ in the tropical Atlantic and $10 m^3/s^2$ in the subtropics and western Atlantic. *Right panel* shows the same for the $1/12^\circ$ model. The highest vertically integrated lee wave energy has roughly the same magnitude of $10^2 m^3/s^2$, but is located in the western Atlantic. As such the increased resolution does not necessarily bring about a stronger lee wave field, but rather affects the geographical distribution of lee wave energy.

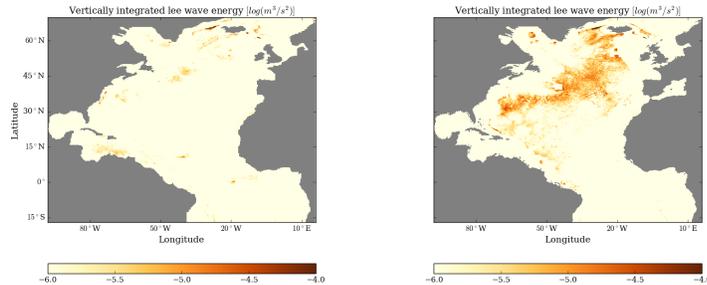


Figure 4.8: *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated energy transfer from the lee wave field to the background internal wave field from the $1/3^\circ$ model. By far largest in the Denmark Strait the energy transfer is here $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$, whereas much of the rest of the model domain shows magnitudes smaller than $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$. *Right panel* shows the same for the $1/12^\circ$ model. The highest energy transfer is also here in the Denmark Strait, but much of the central Atlantic also exhibits energy transfer larger than $10^{-5} m^3/s^2$.

1294 ited large differences in both magnitude and distribution of lee wave generation,
 1295 the difference between the two regional models seems to be mostly in magnitude;
 1296 the lee waves are generated in the same regions, but in a larger amount in the high
 1297 resolution model.

1298 As to the question of what impact model resolution and at the same time eddies

4.3. FINAL CONCLUSIONS ON THE RESOLUTION SENSITIVITY

1299 have on lee wave generation, the answer seems as follows: With a higher horizontal
1300 resolution a higher lee wave generation also follows, and the larger degree to which
1301 eddies are resolved, the stronger the link between eddy activity and lee wave gen-
1302 eration. This is the overall picture on the global scale. In eddy-resolving models
1303 lee wave generation is clearly linked with the eddy activity itself, and as such both
1304 the magnitude and distribution of lee wave generation is substantially different in
1305 high- and coarse resolution models in the current lee wave scheme. Integrated on
1306 a global scale the magnitude of the lee wave energy flux is roughly 25 times larger
1307 in the eddy-resolving model, than in the coarse resolution model. When eddies are
1308 partly resolved the lee wave generation is increased in regions of eddy activity, but
1309 it remains lower than when eddies are fully resolved. In the regional model used
1310 with two different horizontal resolution the lee wave energy flux is roughly six times
1311 larger in the higher resolution model. This was in large part due to the increased lee
1312 wave generation along the North Atlantic Current, which also exhibited a clear eddy
1313 signature.

1314 Chapter 5

1315 Results from parameter 1316 sensitivty analysis in the 1317 regional FLAME model

1318 Results and figures in the section below (from the six experiments including a lee
1319 wave compartment and the control experiment without lee waves) are all gener-
1320 ated using quantities averaged over the last single year of simulation, unless explic-
1321 itly stated otherwise. Calculating averages over exactly one year eliminates possi-
1322 ble bias in magnitudes of different variables due to seasonal fluctuations. Several
1323 figures also contain only images from the base experiment with the isotropic spec-
1324 trum and critical Froude number set to $Fr_c = 0.75$, i.e. the *I075*, but all these have
1325 been examined using all parameter settings. Zonally or vertically averaged quan-
1326 tities, for instance, show little difference between the four topography sensitivity
1327 experiments, and including images of all four in this section would seem repetitive.
1328 The chapter is structured as follows: firstly, results from the base experiment will be
1329 presented thoroughly; secondly, several quantities and results from the base exper-
1330 iment will be compared with with results from the control run in order to asses the
1331 effect of adding a lee wave module to IDEMIX; thereafter, differences between the
1332 four topography sensitivity experiments will be laid out in order to asses the sensi-
1333 tivity of the lee wave module to the topography variables; then follows a comparison
1334 of the results from base experiment with results from the two IDEMIX parameter ex-
1335 periments in order to asses the sensitivity the IDEMIX parameters; at last comes an
1336 overview and summary.

1337 5.1 Description of base experiment

1338 In this section I will present results from the experiment *I075*, i.e. using isotropic
1339 topography spectrum and a critical inverse Froude Number $Fr_c = 0.75$, which I
1340 also refer to as the base experiment. To begin with this particular experiment was

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

1341 chosen as a (or rather *the*) reference experiment, because the isotropic topography
1342 avoided the computationally expensive numerical integration of the energy flux,
1343 and because the critical inverse Froude Number traditionally taken a value close
1344 to $Fr_c = 0.75$ (Scott et al., 2011) due to experimental results (Aguilar and Suther-
1345 land, 2006). This particular setting has also proven to exhibit neither the largest nor
1346 the smallest energy flux and bottom stress. But any of the other four topography
1347 sensitivity experiments could have been used as the reference, without loosing the
1348 general conclusion, which I will present in due course.

1349 5.1.1 Bottom lee wave energy flux, bottom flow, and bottom stress

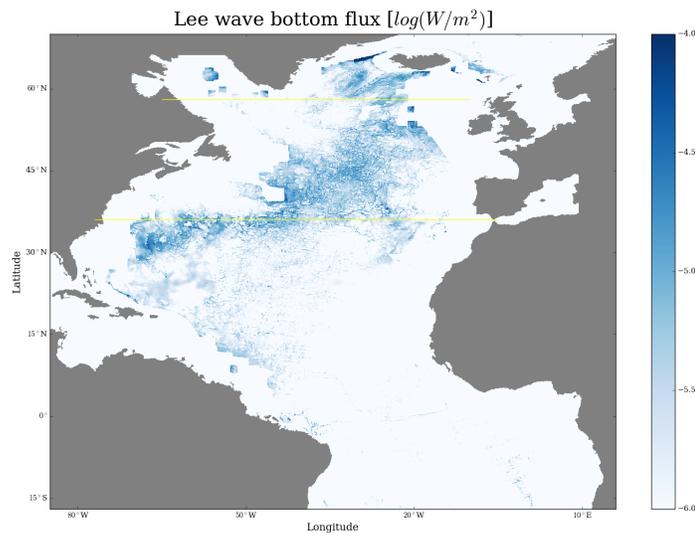


Figure 5.1: The bottom lee wave energy flux is largest along the North Atlantic current and especially in the Northern Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. Notice the logarithmic scale.

1350 The bottom lee wave energy flux F_{I075} is shown in Fig. 5.1. The energy flux is
1351 large in the western Atlantic, along the North Atlantic Current, and in the north-
1352 ern Atlantic, with values between 10^{-5} and $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in many areas and in the
1353 Denmark Strait where values consistently are close to $10^{-4} W/m^2$. The eastern and
1354 especially the tropical Atlantic show very little lee wave generation. Few spots in
1355 the Labrador Sea also show fairly large energy flux. The contours of the topography
1356 data, which restricts lee wave generation, are clearly seen to influence the geograph-
1357 ical distribution of the energy flux - especially in regions of large lee wave generation
1358 (for instance in the northeastern Atlantic and the Labrador Sea) - which intuitively

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

1359 seems somewhat arbitrary. The two yellow lines shown in Fig. 5.1 are lines along
1360 which transects have been made to show the dependency on depth of certain quan-
1361 tities. The transects of said quantities are drawn along latitudes of $37^\circ N$ and $58^\circ N$
1362 and will be presented later.

1363 The horizontally integrated bottom energy flux of the base experiments is,
1364 $F_{glob,IS75} = \int_x \int_y F_{bell} \partial x \partial y = 0.0628 TW$. Along with other main results and differ-
1365 ences across the experiments the global energy flux is listed in table 5.1, which will
1366 be further elucidated later.

1367 The bottom flow from which the lee wave flux is calculated is plotted in Fig. 5.2.
1368 The bottom flow is clearly strongest near coastal boundaries. It is worth mentioning
1369 in this regard, however, that Fig. 5.2 does not show the depth from which the bot-
1370 tom speed is taken, and it is to be expected that the bottom speed is larger in regions
1371 near land boundaries, where the sea is shallower. Secondly, it is important to keep
1372 in mind that the domain of the lee wave generation is restricted by the topography
1373 spectrum. Hence, the very strong bottom flow does in some regions not contribute
1374 to lee wave generation at all. In general the topography spectrum does not allow for
1375 lee wave generation close to land boundaries, although some regions the distance
1376 from land with which the topography data is available varies from region to region.
1377 These near coastal regions are in many cases also where the bottom flow is strongest.
1378 The discrepancy between the ocean domain of the model and the domain of the lee
1379 wave generation is visible in Fig. 5.2, since the *right panel* shows the bottom speed
1380 where the topography data mask has been applied. Much of both the western and
1381 eastern Atlantic, where bottom currents velocities are large, does not allow gener-
1382 ation of lee waves due to the lack of topography data. It should be noted that the
1383 colorbar range has been selected so as to highlight the difference in bottom speed
1384 in the lee wave generation domain as opposed to the entire model domain. In prac-
1385 tice, this means that the largest bottom speed in the entire model domain, i.e. the
1386 *left panel*, is not really captured here (since this has been deemed not of interest).
1387 The strong bottom speed of the Florida east coast and in the western Labrador Sea
1388 approaches $0.4 m/s$ rather than $0.1 m/s$, although this is not shown here.

1389 From Fig. 5.2 it can still be seen that eddies modulate the bottom flow in ar-
1390 eas away from coastal boundaries. Particularly in the midlatitude western Atlantic,
1391 where the bottom flow is around $0.1 m/s$, are the signature of eddies visible. This is
1392 of course the eddies in the North Atlantic Current, that are able to modulate even the
1393 bottom flow. Also in the North Eastern Atlantic are the eddy field visible, although
1394 lee wave generation in this area is largely inhibited due to the topography data. Al-
1395 though the eddy field seems able to affect the bottom flow, very few areas stand out
1396 as areas where a single or a very few eddies are able to determine the average flow
1397 speed over the entire one year simulation to a very large degree. The fact that the
1398 bottom flow bears an eddy signal is in accordance with eddy activity in general being
1399 considered a requisite for lee wave generation (Ferrari and Wunsch, 2009). Over
1400 the time scale associated with an internal wave generation the speed with which
1401 an eddy passes over topography can be considered quasi-steady, which is why the
1402 strong bottom flows associated with deep reaching eddies can generate lee waves.
1403 The fact that no single eddy stands out in any areas is also a sign that differences in
1404 other quantities are not caused by a single eddy and thus more representative of an

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

1405 average stare.

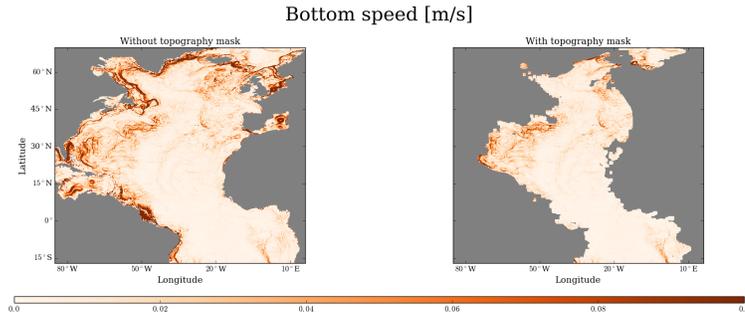


Figure 5.2: The bottom speed is naturally largest near the boundaries, where it is shallower. Large velocities associated with the eddy field is visible in the Western Atlantic and along the North Atlantic Current. Left panel shows the bottom speed in the entire model domain with only land shown in grey. *Right panel* shows the bottom speed with the mask from the topography data set applied greying out regions where lee wave generation is inhibited as well.

1406 The magnitude of the accompanying bottom lee wave stress, $\tau = \sqrt{\tau_u^2 + \tau_v^2}$, is
 1407 shown in Fig. 5.3. The stress is largest in the northern Atlantic and in the Denmark
 1408 strait, where it reaches $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$, with significant magnitudes in the central part of
 1409 the North Atlantic basin - along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge - and in the western Atlantic
 1410 as well. Southward of 30° and east- and westward of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge the
 1411 bottom stress in general decreases. The two black boxes in the Denmark Strait and
 1412 the western Atlantic outline regions in which angle and magnitude of the bottom
 1413 stress from all four topography sensitivity experiments will be closer examined in
 1414 section 5.3.2.

1415 Along with the horizontally integrated bottom energy flux, the x- and y-
 1416 component and the magnitude of the stress, $\tau_{glob} = \int_x \int_y \tau \partial x \partial y$, are all summarized
 1417 for all experiments in table 5.1.

1418 As mentioned the the signal of a varying eddy field is visible in the bottom speed,
 1419 why the eddies can to some extent be expected to modulate the bottom lee wave
 1420 energy flux and hence also the bottom lee wave stress. The evolution of the bottom
 1421 energy flux and bottom stress over time is thus of interest. Therefore the horizon-
 1422 tally integrated bottom flux and bottom stress is plotted as a function of time in Fig.
 1423 5.4 (i.e. where other figures show an average over time of a certain quantity, this is
 1424 not the case for Fig. 5.4). Indeed it can be seen that the bottom stress varies quite
 1425 a lot over the course of the simulation, whereas the bottom energy flux is more sta-
 1426 ble. Neither of them exhibit any clear seasonal trend, though. Both the integrated
 1427 flux and stress have been scaled by their respective maxima, and are thus shown as
 1428 as a fraction of said maxima. As such, the bottom stress varies from 75% to 100%
 1429 of its maximum, whereas the bottom stress varies from roughly 90% to 100% of its

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

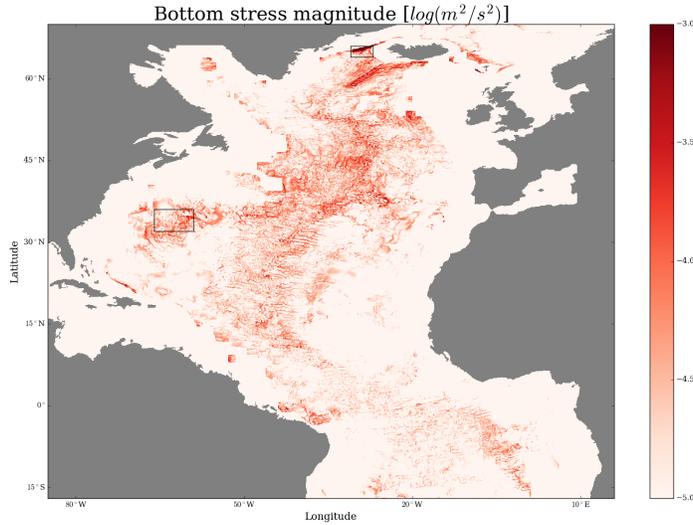


Figure 5.3: Magnitude of the bottom stress caused by lee waves are largest in the western Atlantic, the midlatitude Atlantic and in the Denmark Strait, where it reaches values between $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$ and $10^{-4} m^2/s^2$. In general the stress is large along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and lower in the eastern and western part of the basin. Black boxes indicate two regions where the differences between experiments are examined.

1430 maximum over the course of the experiment.

1431 In general we can so far determine, that the geographical distribution of the lee
1432 wave flux and stress very much follow the strong bottom flow of the North Atlantic
1433 Current and the Denmark Strait, as well the rough bottom topography of the Mid-
1434 Atlantic Ridge.

1435 5.1.2 The three dimensional lee wave field

1436 A central part in understanding the role of lee waves in the model requires a thor-
1437 ough description of the lee wave field itself. So far, the focus has been on the gener-
1438 ation at the bottom, but as the lee wave energy generated at the bottom propagates
1439 upwards in accordance with eq. 2.46, it exchange energy with the mean flow and
1440 transfers energy to the background internal wave field. The bottom energy flux and
1441 these energy transfers will shape the three dimensional lee wave energy field. To
1442 get an overview of the distribution of the lee wave energy and its effect on the mean
1443 flow, I choose here to focus on vertically integrated quantities.

1444 The effect of the lee waves on the mean momentum is given by the pseudo-

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

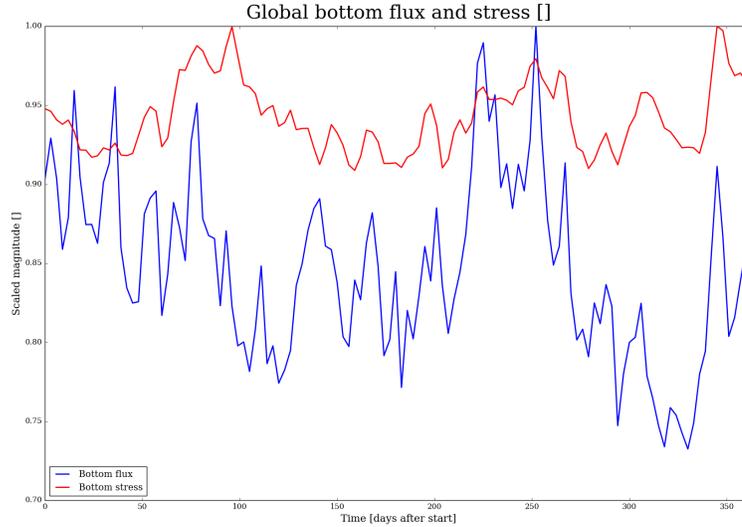


Figure 5.4: The integrated bottom energy flux varies somewhat with time, which could indicate that the eddy field is contributing to lee wave generation in some areas. The bottom stress on the other hand is remarkably steady over the course of the simulation. Notice that both the energy flux and stress have been scaled by their respective maxima and thus appear as dimensionless quantities.

1445 momentum flux determined by Eq. 2.49 and depends on the difference in upward
 1446 and downward propagating lee wave energy, and on the parameter λ_0 . To give an
 1447 overview of the magnitude and the geographical distribution of the lee wave energy
 1448 and the pseudo-momentum flux the vertical integral of these two are plotted
 1449 in Fig. 5.5 and Fig. 5.6, respectively. Although they are closely linked, there are also
 1450 some differences. The lee wave field is very energetic in the western Atlantic, exhibit-
 1451 ing magnitudes close to $10^2 m^3/s^2$, where the pseudo-momentum flux is very small.
 1452 Both reach their maximum across the model domain in the Denmark Strait, with the
 1453 vertically integrated lee wave energy also here reaching $10^2 m^3/s^2$ and the (vertically
 1454 integrated) pseudo-momentum flux being $1 m^3/s^2$, but the pseudo-momentum flux
 1455 is also large in the far northern and mid-latitude Atlantic, where the lee wave energy
 1456 is only moderate. Taking the logarithmic scale into consideration, it is worth notic-
 1457 ing that both the lee wave energy and the pseudo-momentum flux point toward
 1458 large local differences and hotspots of lee wave activity in the western and north-
 1459 ern Atlantic, near the Mid Atlantic Ridge, and in the Denmark Strait, although the
 1460 pseudo-momentum flux in general exhibits an even more "hotspot-like" distribu-
 1461 tion compared to the lee wave energy.

1462 Although the distribution with depths is lost Fig. 5.5 easily give an overview of

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

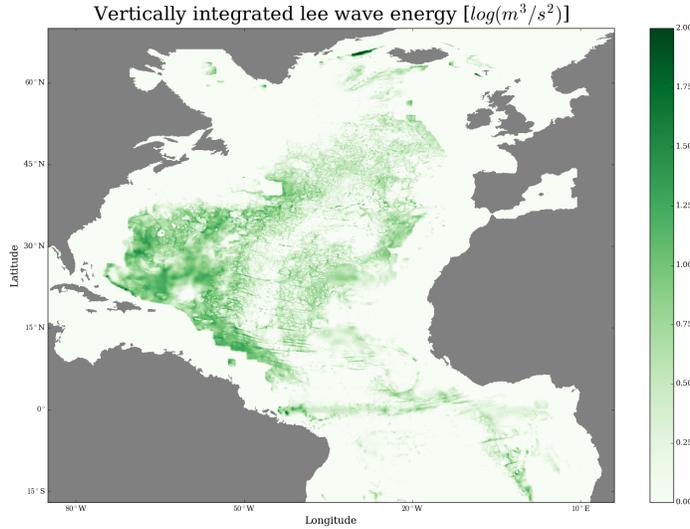


Figure 5.5: The vertically integrated lee wave energy is largest in the western Atlantic and in the Denmark Strait.

1463 the geographical distribution of the lee wave energy.

1464 To put the lee wave energy into perspective the (logarithm of the) ratio of verti-

1465 cally integrated lee wave to background wave energy, $R = \frac{\int_z E_{lee} \partial z}{\int_z E_{iw} \partial z}$ is plotted in Fig.

1466 5.7. Here it is clear that in many regions, the lee wave energy constitute a major frac-

1467 tion of the total internal wave field. Only in a few regions in the North Atlantic where

1468 lee waves are generated, is the background wave field more energetic throughout the

1469 water column, and especially in the subtropical and mid-latitude Western Atlantic is

1470 the lee wave field stronger. In the Southern part of the Atlantic the background wave

1471 field seem more energetic than the lee wave field in general. In most areas where lee

1472 wave generation is inhibited due the topographic spectrum (i.e. near the coastal regions)

1473 the background internal wave field is much more energetic (in many of these

1474 regions the ratio is not even captured in the figure because it is outside the color-

1475 bar range), although this is not the case in subtropical Eastern Atlantic. A possible

1476 explanation for the lee wave energy in this region could be the waves generated at

1477 depths travelling to the Eastern Atlantic, but it could also be because of an energy

1478 transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field (this subject will be covered in sec-

1479 tion 5.1.4). Besides the lee wave activity in the Eastern Atlantic it is noticeable that

1480 the lee wave field dominate the background near Iceland and in the Denmark Strait.

1481 The stronger lee wave field close to the British Isles and near the Eastern coast of

1482 Greenland is not reproduced in Fig. 5.5 and is thus considered to be the result of

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

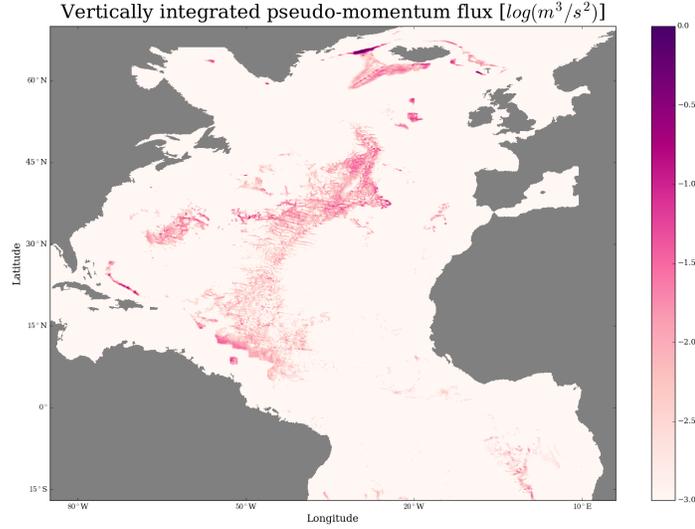


Figure 5.6: The vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux is largest in the Denmark Strait and in the northern and mid-latitude Atlantic.

1483 a particularly weak background internal wave field. The global (i.e. horizontal and
 1484 vertical) integral of the lee wave energy $E_{lee, glob} = \int_z \int_y \int_x E_{lee} \partial x \partial y \partial z = 8.33 \cdot 10^{13} J$,
 1485 and the background IW energy $E_{IW, glob} = \int_z \int_y \int_x E_{IW} \partial x \partial y \partial z = 6.32 \cdot 10^{13} J$, makes
 1486 it clear that the lee wave field is a significant part of the total internal wave field.

1487 In order to gain a perspective of the effect of lee waves as a function of depth
 1488 the lee wave energy (*upper panel*) and the pseudo-momentum flux (*lower panel*)
 1489 is shown in a transect at $37^\circ N$ in Fig. 5.8. The lee wave energy reaches $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$
 1490 near the bottom in most of the transect. The vertical extent with which the lee wave
 1491 energy is dissipated varies along the transect - in most of the western part the lee
 1492 wave energy is by and large dissipated in the bottom most layer, whereas along the
 1493 elevated topography (the rise of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge) in the central and eastern
 1494 part the lee wave energy is dissipated in the bottom most 1000 – 1500m. This could
 1495 be either due to a difference in the transfer to the background internal wave field or
 1496 in the energy transfer to/from the mean flow (energy transfers will be elucidated in
 1497 section 5.1.4)

1498 Between roughly 40 and $25^\circ W$ the rise of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge facilitates
 1499 lee wave activity which results in a pseudo-momentum flux on the order of
 1500 $\mathcal{O}(10^{-4}) m^2/s^2$, but also minor topographic features close to $60^\circ W$ are captured by
 1501 both the model grid and the topographic spectrum, which give rise to a wave-mean
 1502 flow momentum exchange. Both the lee wave energy and the pseudo-momentum
 1503 flux remains, however, fairly localized and basically not present in a very large part of

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

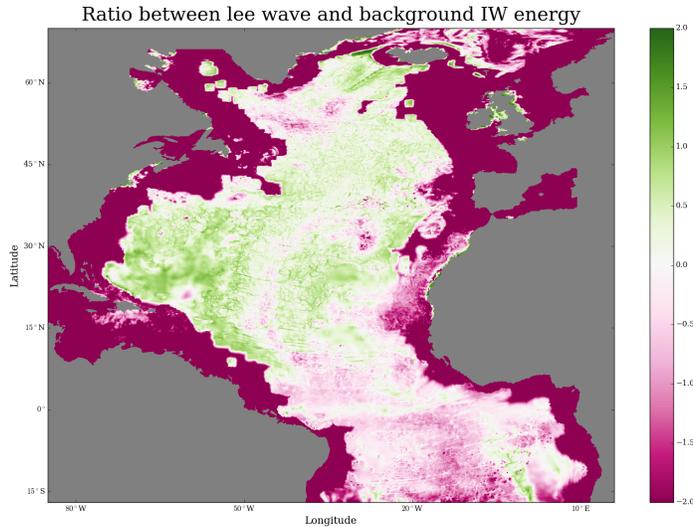


Figure 5.7: The ratio of vertically integrated lee wave and background energy shows the background internal wave field is in much of the ocean up to 10 times, but also that in few hotspots lee wave energy dominate by the same factor. Values are $\log(R)$

1504 the transect. It is also worth noticing that even though there is quite a lot of lee wave
1505 energy near the bottom both west and east of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge the pseudo-
1506 momentum flux remain basically non-existing in these regions.

1507 Together with the vertically integrated lee wave energy Fig. 5.8 gives a good
1508 overview of the three dimensional lee wave field. The western Atlantic holds a great
1509 deal of lee wave energy, but it remains very concentrated near the bottom. Near and
1510 along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge the lee wave field is not as energetic, but the energy
1511 propagates farther upwards in the interior. In much of the eastern Atlantic the lee
1512 wave energy is negligible.

1513 5.1.3 Zonally averaged quantities

1514 Whereas Fig. 5.5 loses the variation of lee wave energy with depth, Fig. 5.8 re-
1515 mains an image at a single latitude. Showing quantities in two dimensional images
1516 (whether it is along the x-plane or z-plane) obviously reveals an inherent problem
1517 when trying to describe a three dimensional field. One ultimately loses the distribu-
1518 tion or magnitude along the third axis. Because of the hypothesized role of lee waves
1519 driven vertical mixing as a potential driver of the overturning circulation (MacKin-
1520 non et al., 2017) an appropriate and potentially rewarding investigation is that which
1521 reveal the meridional and vertical distribution of lee wave energy and the effects

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

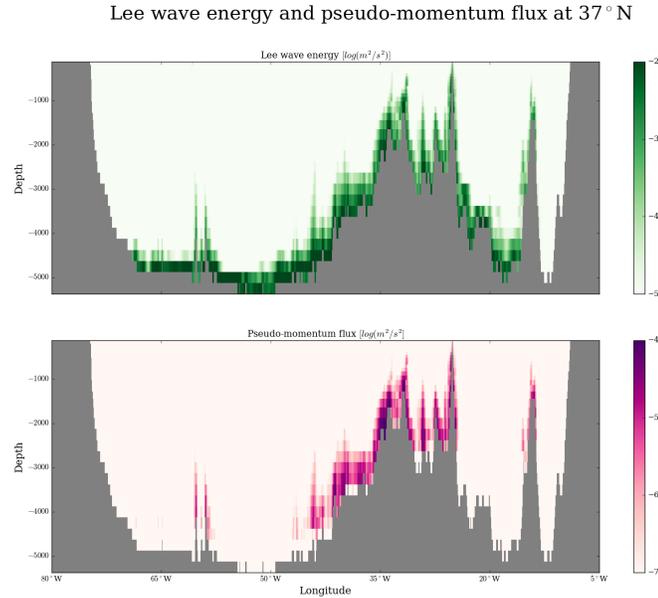


Figure 5.8: Lee wave energy and pseudo-momentum flux from lee waves in a transect at $37^\circ N$. The lee waves itself is large near the bottom at all longitudes, but the pseudo-momentum flux only remove momentum from the mean flow between roughly 55° and $30^\circ W$. Here the pseudo-momentum flux act on roughly the bottom $1000 - 1500m$ of the ocean at their generation site. Notice values are logarithmic values of actual energy and pseudo-momentum flux.

1522 thereof. In the coming subsection I therefore neglect the zonal distribution of the
 1523 quantities in question by zonally averaging them. This will provide insight to which
 1524 latitude and at which depths lee wave generation will have the most influence on
 1525 diffusivity and mean flow. The zonal average of the pseudo-momentum flux is de-
 1526 picted in Fig. 5.9. Here it is important to keep in mind the variation of the bottom
 1527 topography with longitude, which is not visible. Therefor the visible bottom topog-
 1528 raphy is also the *deepest* topography at the latitude in question. Along such latitude
 1529 the topography varies. The lee wave generation and thus the pseudo-momentum
 1530 flux follows the bottom topography and hence the pseudo-momentum flux is fairly
 1531 evenly distributed throughout the water column between 5000 and $2000m$ depth.
 1532 Close to $40^\circ W$ a large amount of momentum is even transferred at $1000m$ depth ow-
 1533 ing to rise of the Mid Atlantic Ridge at this latitude, which is also visible in Fig. 5.8.
 1534 In the zonally averaged sense, though, the lee waves generates the largest pseudo-
 1535 momentum flux of around $10^{-4} m^2/s^2$ close to $60^\circ N$ between $1800m$ depth and the
 1536 surface. This large activity is also visible as the bottom lee wave stress and energy
 1537 flux in North Atlantic and Denmark Strait in Fig. 5.1 and Fig. 5.3.

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

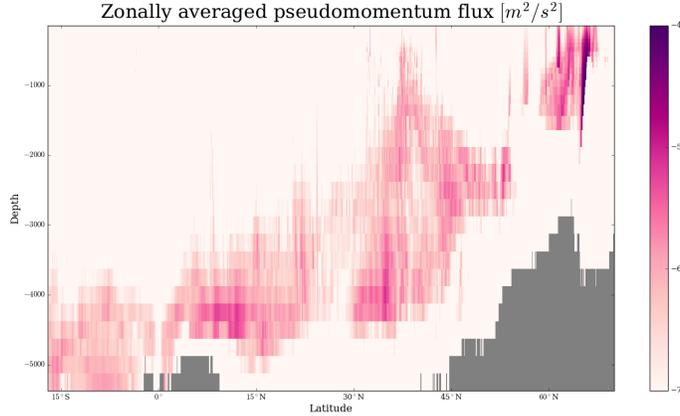


Figure 5.9: The zonally averaged pseudo-momentum flux shows a large drag the mean flow between roughly 5000–2000m depth and between the equator and 55° N. The largest drag on the mean flow, though, occurs close 60° N between 1800m depth and the surface.

1538 The zonally averaged lee wave energy is plotted in Fig. 5.10, which shows that
 1539 on average, the lee wave activity is largest below 4000m depth, where it reaches
 1540 $10^{-3} - 10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ on average. In the regions where the depth of the Atlantic reach
 1541 5000m, the lee wave energy is on average $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ almost everywhere. This is the
 1542 lee wave energy generated in the very deep western Atlantic. One must bear in mind,
 1543 though, the spatial distribution of the lee wave activity indicated in Fig. 5.1 and Fig.
 1544 5.3. The zonally averaged lee wave energy does show, however, that despite hotspots
 1545 in the mid-latitudes lee waves are also present and provide significant energy in the
 1546 tropical Atlantic, although they exchange most of their energy before before reach-
 1547 ing mid-depth. Towards the northern Atlantic the lee wave energy is concentrated at
 1548 shallower depths all the way close to the surface north of 65° N. This is the lee waves
 1549 generated near and in the Denmark Strait

1550 Interestingly, there are certain discrepancies between the depths at which the
 1551 lee wave energy and the pseudo-momentum is largest. As mentioned previously,
 1552 the pseudo-momentum flux depends on the difference in the upward and down-
 1553 ward propagating lee wave energy and on the parameter λ_0 . Naturally the energy
 1554 difference is largest near the bottom, but the effect of a lower λ_0 causes the pseudo-
 1555 momentum flux at the very deep Atlantic to be vanishing. It is also worth mention-
 1556 ing that the the very large pseudo-momentum flux at 1800 – 1000m depth close to
 1557 60° N is not as prominently seen in the zonally averaged lee wave energy.

1558 To give a full understanding of the spatial distribution of lee wave activity the
 1559 zonally averaged lee wave energy in Fig. 5.10 must be considered in combination
 1560 with the vertically integrated lee wave energy shown in Fig. 5.5. The lee wave en-
 1561 ergy is most heavily concentrated in the subtropical western Atlantic which is an

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

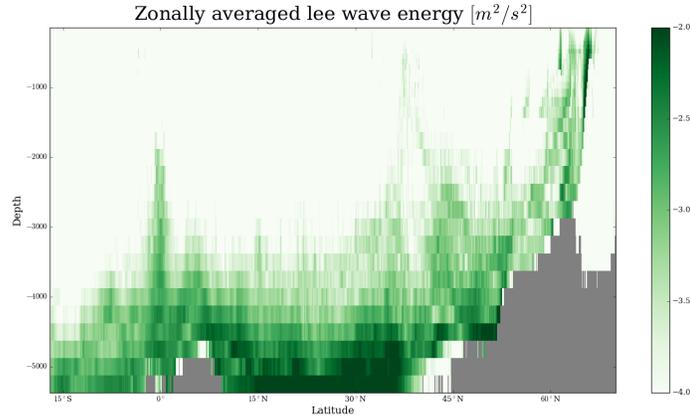


Figure 5.10: The zonally averaged lee wave energy is largest near the bottom. Contrary to the pseudo-momentum flux it is nearly everywhere largest in the bottom most grid cells

1562 area dominated by strong eddies, the signal of which is still somewhat visible in Fig.
 1563 5.2 of the bottom flow. In this region the lee wave energy is located at depths be-
 1564 low 4500m. Besides the western Atlantic there is a hotspot of lee wave close to and
 1565 in the Denmark strait, where the lee wave energy is located close between roughly
 1566 1500m depth and the surface. The bottom flow in this area is not to the same degree
 1567 dominated by the eddy field, but there is a strong bottom mean flow.

1568 The lee waves are allowed to exchange energy with the background wave-field
 1569 assumed to attain a GM shape via the third term on the right hand side in Eq. 2.46,
 1570 $\alpha_{ww} E_{GM} E_{lee}$. In other words, the energy exchange between the lee wave field and
 1571 the background internal wave field is given by the product of the two. Therefore,
 1572 the distribution of the background internal wave energy, and a sense of proportions
 1573 of the magnitudes of the lee wave and background wave field energy is important
 1574 in order to gain a full perspective of the role of lee waves. To compare the two, the
 1575 zonal average of the background internal wave field is shown in Fig. 5.11.

1576 The first thing to notice is the vertical distribution; whereas the lee wave energy
 1577 is largest below 4000m depth, the background internal wave field is largest in the
 1578 uppermost 1500m or so. It is also noticeable, that the background internal wave
 1579 field is strongest south of 15°N, while the lee wave activity is strongest northward
 1580 of that latitude. It also seems clear that the background internal wave energy is
 1581 much more evenly distributed throughout the water column (keeping the logarithmic
 1582 color scale of the zonally averaged lee wave energy in mind). It should be kept
 1583 in mind, though, that the zonally averaged quantity does not capture the zonal dis-
 1584 tribution, and that both the two wave fields and the pseudo-momentum flux are
 1585 three dimensional fields. There are also indications that the lee wave field is able

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

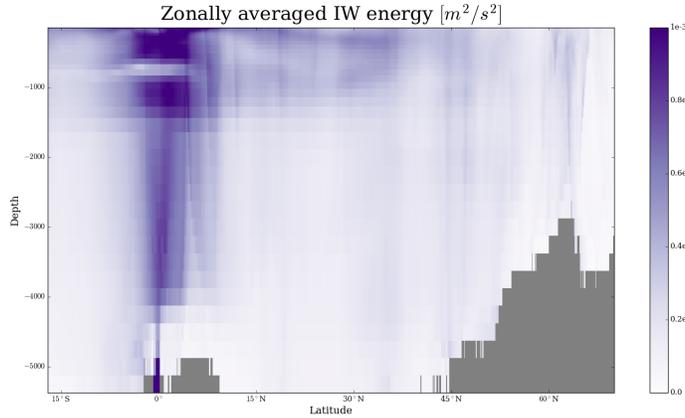


Figure 5.11: The zonally average internal wave energy

1586 to significantly influence the background internal wave field - even in a zonally av-
 1587 eraged sense. Close to $48^\circ N$ and $60^\circ N$ there are clear deep reaching tongues of high
 1588 internal wave energy correlating very well with regions of large amounts of lee wave
 1589 energy.

1590 5.1.4 Energy transfers

1591 So far I have mostly touched upon the lee wave energy itself, and only briefly men-
 1592 tioned the energy transfer between the lee wave and the background wave field, and
 1593 the momentum transfer between lee waves and the mean flow. To put the lee wave
 1594 energy field into perspective also requires a description of the energy transfer from
 1595 the lee wave field to both the background internal wave field and to the mean flow.
 1596 These energy transfers will be highlighted in the following section.

1597 The propagation and energy transfer of the lee waves are determined by Eq. 2.46,
 1598 where the second and fourth term on the right hand side represent the energy ex-
 1599 changes with the mean flow and the background internal wave field, respectively.
 1600 The energy exchange with the mean flow can be of either sign (for both the up- and
 1601 downward propagating lee waves), but a non-zero exchange requires wave break-
 1602 ing according to the non-acceleration theorem (Andrews and McIntyre, 1976; Boyd,
 1603 1976). Fig 5.12 shows the energy transfers from the lee wave field at $37^\circ N$. The *up-*
 1604 *per panel* shows the transfer to the background internal wave field, which follows
 1605 very closely the distribution of the lee wave field itself. It reaches its maximum of
 1606 $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and below $4000m$ near $45^\circ N$. Both the en-
 1607 ergy transfer to (*middle panel*) and from the mean flow (*lower panel*) are everywhere
 1608 at least an order of magnitude lower than to the internal wave field. Both are located
 1609 (in significant magnitudes) almost exclusively over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge.

1610 The first and third terms on the right hand side of Eq 2.46 are the vertical diver-

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

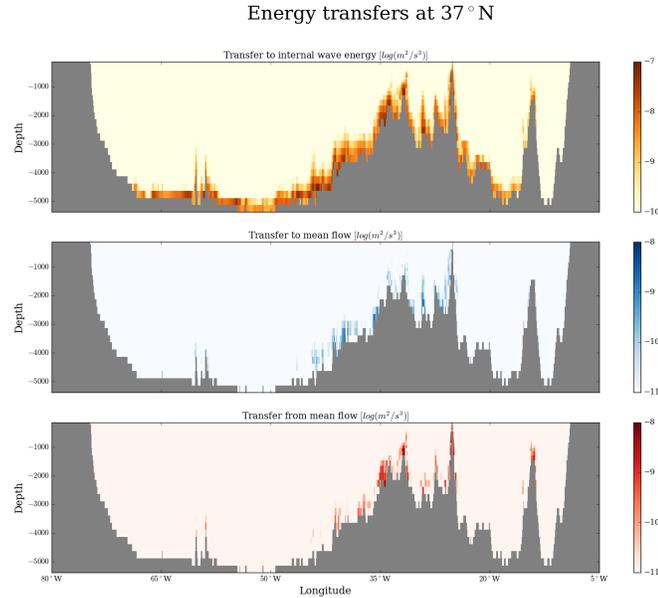


Figure 5.12: The *upper panel* shows the energy transfer to the background internal wave field. Its distribution follows very closely the distribution of the lee wave field and reaches maxima of $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ near the bottom over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and below 4000m depth near $45^\circ N$. The *middle panel* shows the transfer to the mean flow, which is very localized over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. The *lower panel* shows the transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field. This transfer also shows maxima over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. In general the mean flow exchanges are at least an order of magnitude smaller than the transfer to the internal wave field.

1611 gence in lee wave energy flux and the exchange between up- and downward prop-
 1612 agating lee wave energy respectively. Whereas the vertical divergence is visible in
 1613 the transect, it vanishes when integrating vertically. Furthermore, the exchange be-
 1614 tween up- and downward propagating energy does not alter the total energy. As
 1615 such, vertically integrating Eq. 2.46 leaves only the the energy exchange with the
 1616 background internal wave field and the mean flow as the true ways in which the lee
 1617 wave field loses energy (keeping in mind that the interaction with the mean flow can
 1618 also transfer energy to the lee wave field).

1619 Fig. 5.13 shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy (*upper left panel*) along
 1620 with the vertically integrated energy transfers to the internal wave compartment
 1621 (*upper right panel*) and to (*lower left panel*) and from the mean flow (*lower right*
 1622 *panel*) for the base experiment. The magnitudes of the energy transfer rates amount
 1623 to roughly 10^{-5} times the lee wave energy itself (in a vertically averaged sense) and
 1624 their magnitude correspond well with the lee wave bottom energy flux shown in Fig.

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

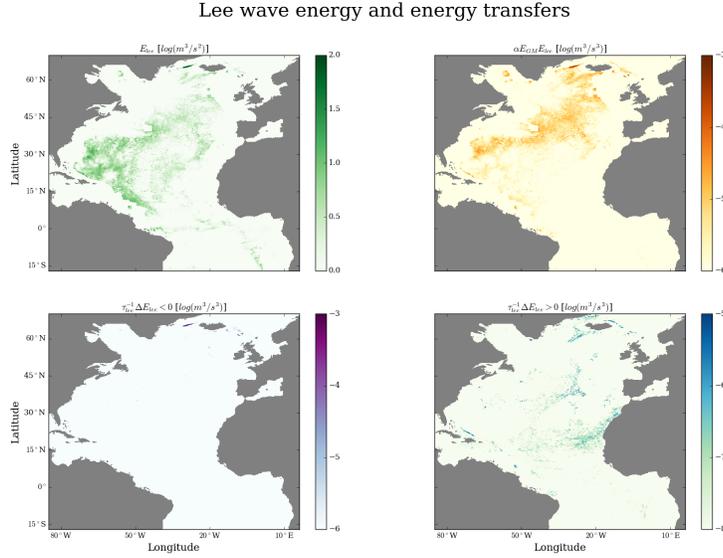


Figure 5.13: The *upper left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy. The *upper right panel* shows the energy transfer to the background internal wave field, which is the largest energy transfer in a vertically integrated sense. The *lower left panel* shows the energy transfer from the lee wave compartment to the mean flow. This is very localized with a very large transfer in the Denmark Strait but very small in the rest of the model domain. The *bottom right panel* shows the energy transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave compartment. This transfer happens predominantly in the eastern subtropical or in the Northern Atlantic, but it is in general a factor of 10 or more smaller than the transfer to the internal wave compartment.

1625 5.1 (there should naturally be a balance between the energy flux at the bottom and
 1626 the total transfers in a vertical average).

1627 Overall the largest energy transfer is clearly that to the background internal wave
 1628 compartment. This transfer reaches magnitudes of $10^{-3} m^3/s^3$ in the Denmark Strait
 1629 and is an order of magnitude or two lower along the North Atlantic Current. Over
 1630 much of the model domain, the transfer to the background internal wave field is
 1631 two or three orders of magnitude larger than the transfer both from and to the mean
 1632 flow, although the Denmark Strait is an outlier in this regard. Here, the energy trans-
 1633 fer to the mean flow roughly equals that to the background internal wave domain.
 1634 Interestingly, the energy transfer to the mean flow in the Denmark Strait, which is
 1635 roughly $10^{-3} m^3/s^3$, is two orders of magnitude larger than the energy exchange with
 1636 the mean flow (to or from) in any other region (in the vertically integrated sense).
 1637 The energy transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave compartment is largest in
 1638 the north Atlantic and near the Mid Atlantic Ridge, where it is around $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$. In

5.1. DESCRIPTION OF BASE EXPERIMENT

1639 general the energy transfer to and from the mean flow seems more localized than
1640 than to the background internal wave compartment. Considering the magnitudes
1641 of the energy transfers the total lee wave energy field can thus be considered, as an
1642 approximation, to be in a balance between the bottom energy flux and the transfer
1643 to the background internal wave field in many regions except the Denmark Strait.
1644 There are, however, geographical differences between the total lee wave energy and
1645 the transfer to the internal wave field, which are interesting. South of $30^\circ N$ there
1646 are many regions where the lee wave energy is quite large, but the transfer away
1647 from lee waves is quite small. This again correspond well with the bottom energy
1648 flux shown in Fig. 5.1 also being small in these regions, but it is interesting that
1649 significant amounts of lee wave energy is able to persist here nonetheless. This of
1650 course matters little for the diffusivity simulated by the model, but it still acts as a
1651 good example of how the amount of lee wave energy in a water column is not only a
1652 function of the bottom energy flux, but a balance between the bottom flux and the
1653 energy transfers.

1654 The amount of energy provided by the lee wave field for mixing is proportional to
1655 the energy transfer to the background internal wave field determined by the fourth
1656 term in Eq. 2.46, and thus governs the increase in diffusivity due to lee waves in
1657 the current formulation. As such, the *upper right panel* of Fig. 5.13 also represents
1658 an image of where the lee wave field is able to affect the diffusivity as modelled by
1659 IDEMIX. The separation of the lee wave energy from the background energy is due to
1660 their different spectral shapes, although the influence on diffusivity of the lee wave
1661 and background (or GM) internal waves, does maybe not warrant this separation
1662 (more on this in section 7).

1663 Together Fig. 5.12 and 5.13 provides a clear image of the energy transfer to the in-
1664 ternal wave compartment as the largest energy transfer and thus main route through
1665 which lee wave energy dissipates in the current model formulation.

1666 5.1.5 Summary of description of the base experiment

1667 All in all the base experiments show a lee wave energy flux at its largest along the
1668 North Atlantic Current, in the northern Atlantic and the Denmark Strait, where it
1669 reaches $10^{-4} W/m^2$. Over the entire model domain the total lee wave energy flux
1670 amounts to $0.0628 TW$ (this is roughly a quarter of previous estimates of a *global* lee
1671 wave energy flux (Scott et al., 2011; Trossman et al., 2013)). In the current model
1672 implementation the lee wave field exist in a balance predominantly between the
1673 bottom energy flux and the energy transfer to the background internal wave field,
1674 since this transfer constitutes by far the largest route, through which the lee wave
1675 energy dissipates. On average the lee wave energy is by far largest below $4500m$
1676 depth, whereas the pseudo-momentum flux, the vertical divergence of which enters
1677 the mean residual momentum equation, is largest above $4200m$ depth. This energy
1678 is potentially able to significantly alter the internal wave field, though. Vertically
1679 integrated the lee wave energy can be up to 100 times larger than the background
1680 internal wave energy depending on the region in question.

1681 **5.2 Effect of a lee wave module - difference from con-** 1682 ****control run****

1683 After the thorough description of the base experiment, I now turn my attention to
1684 the effect of adding a lee wave module to IDEMIX. This is best done by a comparison
1685 with the control experiment (i.e. the experiment without lee waves). In theory the
1686 control experiment can be compared with any of the topography sensitivity experi-
1687 ments, but for simplicity I have opted to only compare the control experiment with
1688 the base experiment - that which I will also use as a reference in the comparison
1689 with other experiments in sections 5.3 and 5.4. In the following section I will focus
1690 on the mean flow, the buoyancy frequency and the diffusivity.

1691 The effect of the lee waves as a function of depth is important, not only because
1692 of the removal of momentum from the mean flow, but also because of the fact that
1693 the internal wave field gives rise to a vertical mixing via their breaking. As mentioned
1694 in the introduction internal wave breaking is an important driver of the large scale
1695 ocean circulation, and one of the important aspects in this process is the depth at
1696 which this mixing occurs. This raises the question of whether or not the breaking of
1697 lee waves increases the diffusivity in the interior ocean, and if so where the increase
1698 occurs. The difference in vertical diffusivity is therefore an important aspect of the
1699 experiment, although, as mentioned, the lee wave field is only indirectly linked to
1700 the diffusivity via the energy transfer to the background internal wave field. It is im-
1701 portant to remember that, in the control run the internal wave field is still modelled
1702 by IDEMIX, so the vertical diffusivity is still calculated on the basis of internal wave
1703 dynamics caused by winds and internal tides.

1704 **5.2.1 Linking the lee wave energy field with the diffusivity**

1705 To complete the understanding of the spatial distribution and magnitude of the lee
1706 wave energy field and the effect on stratification and diffusivity, the transect at $37^\circ N$,
1707 showing lee wave energy and pseudo-momentum flux in Fig 5.8, is broadened to
1708 include other quantities as well and supplemented with another transect at $58^\circ N$. A
1709 more thorough and clearer image of the effect of the lee wave field on diffusivity is
1710 presented (by comparing them directly with other key quantities) in Fig. 5.14 and
1711 Fig. 5.15. The first latitude was chosen because of the large amount of lee wave
1712 energy apparent in Fig. 5.5, and the second was chosen due to the difference in lee
1713 wave flux across the Atlantic from west to east as apparent in Fig. 5.1.

1714 In Fig. 5.14 the lee wave energy in the *upper left panel* is largest near the bot-
1715 tom in the western section of transect. Almost no lee wave energy is generated
1716 on the eastern side of the Mid Atlantic Ridge. This panel is similar to the upper
1717 panel in Fig. 5.8. The energy transfer from the lee wave to the internal wave com-
1718 partment is plotted in the *upper middle panel* and correlates fairly well with the lee
1719 wave energy itself. The internal wave energy is shown in the *upper right panel*, with
1720 magnitudes between 10^{-4} and $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$ in much of the western part of the tran-
1721 sect. In Fig. 5.14 is also shown the relative differences in both internal wave en-
1722 ergy (*lower right panel*) and in the buoyancy frequency (*lower middle panel*). Here

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

1723 - and in the rest of this section - the difference and relative difference between the
1724 base experiment and the control experiment is calculated as $\Delta X = X_{I075} - X_{ctrl}$ and
1725 $\Delta X_{rel} = (X_{I075} - X_{ctrl}) / X_{ctrl}$, respectively. In other words, a positive difference in
1726 a certain quantity indicate that adding the lee wave module caused an increase in
1727 the quantity in question. There is a clear increase in internal wave energy at $45^\circ W$
1728 of more than three times the internal wave energy from the control experiment
1729 throughout the entire water column, which coincides very well with a transfer of
1730 lee wave energy near the bottom. A smaller but still visible transfer of lee wave en-
1731 ergy close to $60^\circ W$ also contributes to increase the background internal wave energy
1732 in the entire water column. In general the internal wave energy is increased in the
1733 entire transect and by more than 50% in most of the western part of the transect,
1734 where energy transfer from lee waves is prominent near the bottom.

1735 The fact that the relative increase in internal wave energy persists through out
1736 the water column shows that the vertical propagation of internal wave energy is po-
1737 tentially very important to consider, when estimating the influence of lee waves on
1738 the diffusivity. The diffusivity difference, $\kappa_{I075} - \kappa_{ctrl}$, shown in the *bottom left panel*,
1739 can be as large as $\pm 0.1 m^2/s$ near the bottom, but in the interior such large values
1740 are not present. The large differences in diffusivity correlates very well with the rela-
1741 tive difference in buoyancy frequency (*bottom middle panel*). Although the internal
1742 wave energy shows a large increase, relative to control run, in the interior, this does
1743 not translate into diffusivity differences, which are numerically as large as those at
1744 the bottom. Although not shown here, it is the case that the relative difference in
1745 diffusivity in the interior is large even though the numerical difference is not (as
1746 compared to that near the bottom), while the relative difference near the bottom is
1747 not very large (this is shown in section A of the Appendix). With this in mind, the en-
1748 ergy transfer from the lee wave to the internal wave compartment serves to increase
1749 the diffusivity in the interior rather than near the bottom.

1750 A second transect at $47^\circ N$ is shown in Fig. 5.15. The lee wave energy (*upper left*
1751 *panel*) reaches magnitudes of $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ near the bottom between 40° and $15^\circ W$
1752 and generally decrease by an order of magnitude within the bottom most 500m.
1753 The energy transfer to the internal wave field (*upper middle panel*) is largest on the
1754 western side and at the top of the ridge near $28^\circ W$, where it reaches $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$. On
1755 the eastern side of the ridge the energy transfer decreases towards the east. This is
1756 mirrored in the internal wave energy (*upper right panel*) which is elevated on the
1757 western side of the ridge as opposed to the eastern side (disregarding the very large
1758 values at the eastern shelf, which has not correlated to the lee wave energy at all).
1759 The internal wave energy is increased by more than a factor of three throughout the
1760 water column in most of the western side of the ridge (*lower right panel*). On the
1761 eastern slope of the ridge the increase is smaller but still significant, until roughly
1762 $15^\circ W$ east of which changes are insignificant. This is in almost perfect alignment
1763 with the energy transfer from the lee wave field, which is lower on the eastern side
1764 of the ridge and more than two orders of magnitude lower than its maximum east of
1765 $15^\circ W$.

1766 Despite this large increase in internal wave energy on the western side of the
1767 ridge the diffusivity exhibits largest numerical differences (*lower left panel*) near the
1768 bottom on the western side of the ridge, where it is decreased by up to $0.05 m^2/s$.

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

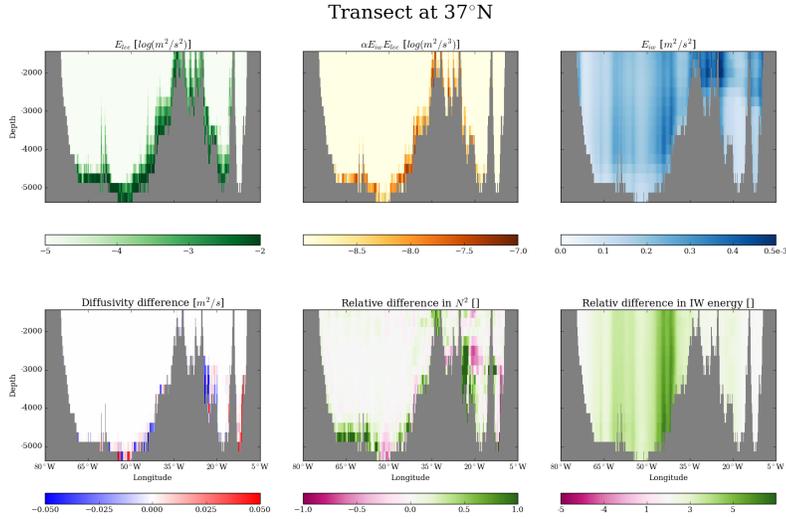


Figure 5.14: Key variables at 37°N: *Upper left*: Lee wave energy is largest near the bottom west of 40°W; *upper middle*: The energy transfer between the lee wave and background internal wave domain follows largely the distribution of the lee wave energy; *upper right*: the background IW energy is fairly evenly distributed over the transect, but the magnitude is significantly lower than the maximum lee wave energy and it decreases towards the bottom; *lower left* the diffusivity difference is by far numerically largest near the bottom, where it is both negative and positive. Values of $\pm 0.1 m^2/s$ are significantly higher than the canonical Munk value of 10^{-4} ; *lower middle*: the relative difference in N^2 is little throughout much of the transect but near the bottom it is of larger magnitude (both negative and positive). Close to 20°W there is a region of rather large magnitude, which is replicated as a decrease in diffusivity; *lower right* the relative difference in background internal wave energy is very large throughout the western part of the transect. It is very clear that the transfer of lee wave energy near the bottom just west of 40°W is seen throughout the water column in as an increase in internal wave energy. It is, however, not as apparent in the diffusivity.

1769 This decrease correlates well with an increase in buoyancy frequency (*lower middle*
 1770 *panel*) near the bottom here of roughly an order of magnitude. There are also large
 1771 difference in the diffusivity in the interior near 1500m depth, which correlate well
 1772 with changes in the buoyancy frequency. As is the case at 37°, the largest numerical
 1773 differences in diffusivity is thus related to changes in the buoyancy frequency,
 1774 but these differences occur in regions with already very high diffusivity due to a low
 1775 buoyancy frequency. In section A of the Appendix, it is shown that the relative dif-

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

1776 ference in diffusivity is by far largest in the interior on the western side of the ridge,
 1777 where it is increased by more than an order of magnitude, and is thus clearly related
 1778 to the energy transfer from the lee wave field to the internal wave field.

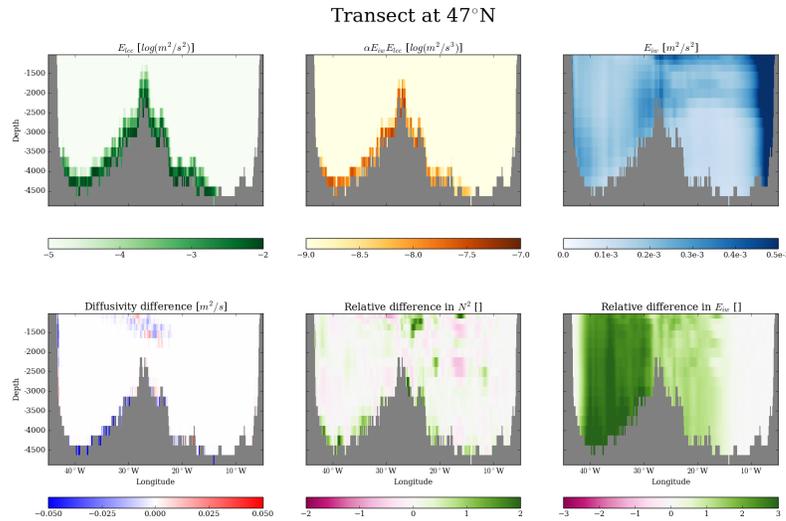


Figure 5.15: The lee wave energy (*upper left panel*) is largest on the west of roughly 15°W, where it reaches $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ near the bottom. The energy transfer to the background internal wave energy (*upper middle panel*) reaches $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ on the western side of the ridge, but decreases towards the east on the eastern side. This is mirrored in the internal wave energy (*upper right panel*), which is elevated on the western side of the ridge, with relative increases by more than a factor of three (*lower right panel*). The diffusivity is decreased (*lower left panel*) near the bottom on the western side, though, which correlate with increase in buoyancy frequency (*lower middle panel*).

1779 5.2.2 Differences in zonally averaged quantities

1780 Whereas the above section thoroughly describe the interdependence of the lee wave
 1781 energy, the diffusivity and the buoyancy frequency, Fig. 5.14 and 5.15 only provide
 1782 images at single latitudes. To keep in line with previous figures and to keep the same
 1783 sense of overview, I want to show here the variation of the effects of lee waves with
 1784 depth and latitude, as well. As in section 5.1, I will therefore show zonal averages of
 1785 the difference in diffusivity and buoyancy stratification. This will provide insight to
 1786 the overall effect of lee waves in the vertical-meridional plane.

1787 The difference in the zonally averaged diffusivity is shown in Fig. 5.16 (*upper*

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

1788 *panel*). Since the diffusivity above 2000m depth is dominated by large local changes
1789 possibly due to a varying eddy or internal wave field, which does not elucidate the
1790 point made here, only the depths below 2000m is shown. The first striking aspect
1791 is that difference in diffusivity is negative towards the very bottom - meaning that
1792 the diffusivity is largest in the control run - where the lee wave energy is largest.
1793 Secondly, the magnitude of difference is very large - on the order of $\mathcal{O}(10^{-1})$ - con-
1794 sidering values of $\kappa_\rho > 10^{-3}$ are quite uncommon (in the interior at least).

1795 Also in Fig.5.16 is shown the relative difference in (zonally averaged) diffusivity
1796 (*lower panel*). The pattern of the relative difference in diffusivity follows relatively
1797 closely that of the numerical difference. The large numerical decrease below 4500m
1798 depth is not rendered as significant, though, but is nonetheless of at least 30% of
1799 the diffusivity in the control experiment. As such, the largest difference relative to
1800 the control experiment is the large increase from about 3000m depth to above 200m
1801 depth between 55° and 60°N. Here the difference is more than three times the diffu-
1802 sivity from the control experiment (i.e. an increase of 200%). This increase takes
1803 place in the Labrador Sea, which is subjected to strong convection in the winter
1804 time. The increase in diffusivity here is (although not shown) due to a decrease in
1805 buoyancy frequency over a large area not related to the internal wave field. In the
1806 interior the relative differences although more moderate can still be up to $\pm 50\%$.
1807 Between 3000 and 2000m depth at 30° – 40°N, however, there are also significant
1808 increases in diffusivity, which could easily be correlated with lee wave activity pre-
1809 sented previously. It is however still striking that in the zonally averaged sense the
1810 lee wave energy shown in Fig. 5.10 seems to be more correlated with a decrease
1811 rather than an increase in zonally averaged diffusivity, although there is no theoret-
1812 ical argument for this.

1813 It is important to keep in mind that the zonally averaged diffusivity can eschew
1814 the sense of total diffusion of energy, because the zonal extent is not equal at all
1815 depths. In theory, the addition of lee waves should lead an increase in mixing and
1816 therefore a more homogeneous ocean represented by a lower buoyancy stratifica-
1817 tion near the bottom.

1818 In the bottom most 3000m the image of this is a bit more unclear though.
1819 The difference and relative difference in zonally averaged buoyancy stratification
1820 is shown in Fig. 5.17. Near the bottom the numerical difference in (the square of
1821 the) buoyancy stratification is between 10^{-8} and 0.5×10^{-7} meaning that the base
1822 experiment cause a sharper vertical density gradient. Above this patch of increased
1823 stratification is then a layer of decreased stratification, although the magnitude of
1824 this decrease is not as large. The aforementioned local changes hypothesized to
1825 be caused by a varying eddy or internal wave field can be seen in the *upper panel*
1826 near 50°N (I have decidedly chosen to leave out change above 2000m depth, be-
1827 cause they are dominated by these large local differences). In the *lower panel* the
1828 relative difference shows that only below 4000m depth is the buoyancy frequency
1829 significantly altered, as the differences in much of the interior is rendered to a few
1830 percentages of that of the control experiment. As such, the numerical increase be-
1831 low 4000m depth is translated into somewhere between a 50 and a 100% increase.
1832 This is the case from roughly 15 – 50°N.

1833 As mentioned, the increase in diffusivity close to 55°N aligns well with a de-

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

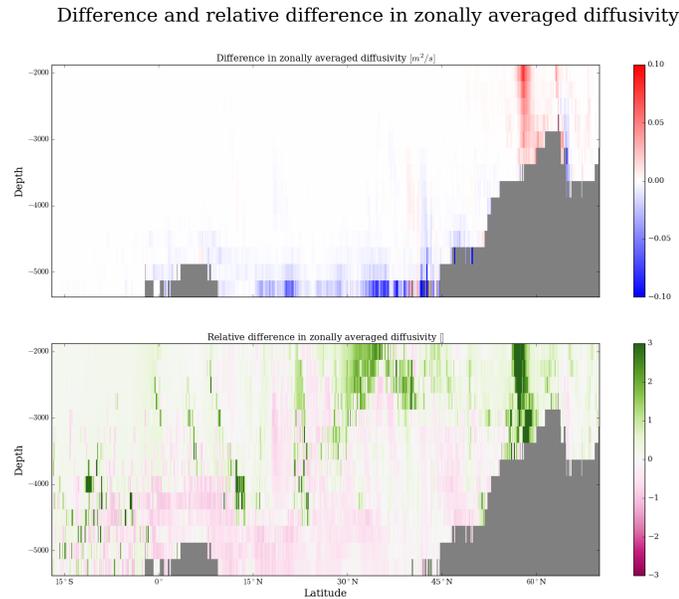


Figure 5.16: The diffusivity is decreased towards the bottom and increased in the northern Atlantic in a tongue between 55° and $60^\circ N$ extending some 2500m

1834 crease in buoyancy frequency. This deep reaching tongue of decreased buoyancy
 1835 frequency is not as prominent in the relative difference as in the numerical, since it
 1836 occurs in a region where buoyancy frequency is in general very low but still visible
 1837 with a decrease in stratification between 5 and 20% increasing towards the bottom.

1838 In general the differences in diffusivity and stratification are obviously anti-
 1839 correlated; as given by the Osborne-Cox relation. It was the hypothesis, however,
 1840 that a large lee wave energy would lead to an increase in diffusivity which in turn
 1841 would decrease the stratification via mixing. In that sense, there exists a posi-
 1842 tive feedback between stratification and diffusivity; the lower (higher) the stratifi-
 1843 cation, the easier (more difficult) mixing becomes, which would be evident from a
 1844 high (low) diffusivity, which would in turn decrease (increase) the stratification even
 1845 more. As such, it is not always apparent whether a lower stratification, or an increase
 1846 in mixing would be the first change in this process. On the other hand, there is also
 1847 a negative feedback involved, since the mechanism responsible for the mixing - the
 1848 internal waves - feeds of the stratification. This is evident from Eq. 2.34, where the
 1849 factor $(N^2 - u^2 k^2)^{1/2}$ is a quarter-circle with radius $N^2 - f^2$, and thus a larger N^2
 1850 implying a larger integral over k . A physical interpretation of this would claim that
 1851 a higher stratification allows for more energetic internal waves, which in turn are
 1852 able to provide more mixing leading to a lower stratification. This negative feedback
 1853 is also mentioned by Trossman et al. (2013) and Melet et al. (2015). In this study it

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

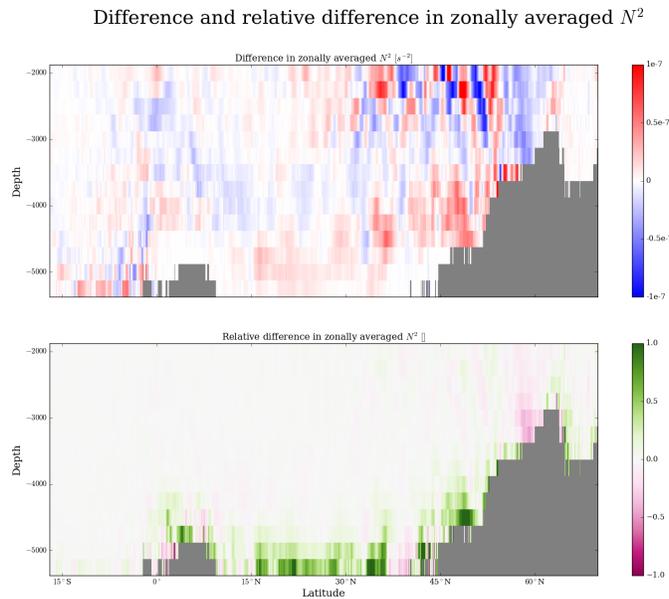


Figure 5.17: The numerical difference in N^2 is larger at intermediate depth, but the relative difference remain largest at the bottom. The decrease in N^2 close to 55° is a decrease of about 2 – % relative to the control run.

1854 is evident, that both the largest decreases and the largest increases in diffusivity
 1855 is caused by the increase and decrease in stratification, respectively.

1856 The zonally averaged differences must be taken with some reservation, though,
 1857 when trying to form a comprehensive picture of the three dimensional effect of the
 1858 lee waves. They are still zonally averages and, as such, it is important to be aware
 1859 of the fact that the zonal extent of the model is not equal at all depths because of
 1860 land/seafloor barriers. A shorter zonal extent - which is not visible in figures of zonal
 1861 averages - thus makes a larger difference in zonal averaged quantities possible. The
 1862 zonal averages must therefore be paired with the Fig. 5.1 and Fig. 5.3 of the lee
 1863 wave bottom flux and stress in order to obtain a more thorough image of the spatial
 1864 distribution of the lee waves and their effect.

1865 Together, though, the transects shown in Fig. 5.14 and 5.15 and the zonal aver-
 1866 ages in Fig. 5.17 and 5.16 form a very thorough image of the influence of lee waves
 1867 on the diffusivity and buoyancy stratification with the current model implementa-
 1868 tion. In contrast to the background internal wave energy, the lee wave energy is con-
 1869 centrated in certain geographical hotspots in the model; namely the Denmark Strait
 1870 and the western Atlantic. While the background internal wave energy is largest in
 1871 the upper part of the ocean, the lee wave energy is concentrated near the bottom
 1872 - at whatever (varying) depth the bottom is. Although the energy transfer from lee

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

1873 waves to the background internal waves depends on both both fields, it is almost ex-
1874 clusively largest in the bottom model layer, where the lee wave energy field is largest.
1875 Nonetheless, the energy transfer at the bottom is able to increase the internal wave
1876 energy by up to 5 times and thus the diffusivity throughout the water column. These
1877 large increases in internal wave energy does increase the diffusivity, although the
1878 largest differences in diffusivity is more closely linked with changes in the buoyancy
1879 frequency and take place in regions with already very large diffusivities.

1880 5.2.3 Effects on the mean flow

1881 So far the effect of the lee waves has been focused on diffusivity and stratification.
1882 However, the pseudo-momentum flux will also directly affect the transport by re-
1883 moving momentum from the mean flow via the (residual) momentum equation (in
1884 addition to the removal of momentum from the mean flow at the bottom via the
1885 bottom boundary condition given by Eq. 2.55). This should result in a lower veloc-
1886 ities. The difference in bottom velocity between experiment *I075* and the control
1887 run, $\Delta|U|_{z=-H} = |U_{I075}|_{z=-H} - |U_{ctrl}|_{z=-H}$, is plotted in Fig. 5.18, and it is clear that
1888 in most regions the bottom velocity is significantly decreased. It should be kept in
1889 mind here, that in several regions where the bottom current is originally strong (for
1890 instance the Deep Western Boundary Current, but in near coastal regions in gen-
1891 eral), lee waves are inhibited due to the topographic data. Nevertheless we see a
1892 decrease in the bottom velocity on the order of $\mathcal{O}(0.1\text{ m/s})$ in several regions, which
1893 naturally coincide with the distribution of the bottom stress. Most noticeable is the
1894 large area of decrease in the Western Atlantic, along the North Atlantic Current, and
1895 in the overflow regions of the North Atlantic. Particularly interesting is the decrease
1896 in velocity in the East Greenland Current when compared with the West Greenland
1897 Current, where the bottom speed is increased a little, when taking into account the
1898 lack of lee wave generation in the Labrador Sea. This shows that the lee wave are
1899 able to remove momentum from and significantly reduce bottom ocean currents
1900 with the current model setup. A few regions show an increase in bottom velocity,
1901 but this difference almost exclusively occurs in shallow regions and take a charac-
1902 teristic eddy-shape, and it is therefore taken as a result of the varying eddy field.

1903 The difference in velocity between experiment *I075* and the control run is also
1904 plotted along with the pseudo-momentum flux in a transect at 37°N in Fig. 5.19.
1905 Between longitudes 75°W and 50°W there are two vertical sections of a signifi-
1906 cant decrease and increase in velocity, which seem uncorrelated with the pseudo-
1907 momentum flux from the lee waves. Both the increase and decrease in these areas
1908 are interpreted as a result of a varying eddy field, but this is an example of the cor-
1909 relation between the velocity and the lee waves not being exactly clear and of the
1910 varying eddy field still playing a role in the average quantities over the simulation
1911 length. If such large velocity differences can persist, where the pseudo-momentum
1912 from lee waves is negligible, to what degree is the velocity difference then attributed
1913 to lee waves *in* the regions where lee waves are present? This is impossible to answer,
1914 but as mentioned the integration length should ideally be so long as to single out the
1915 influences of lee waves over average quantities, although this does not seem to be
1916 the case here. At the longitudes and depths, where a significant pseudo-momentum

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

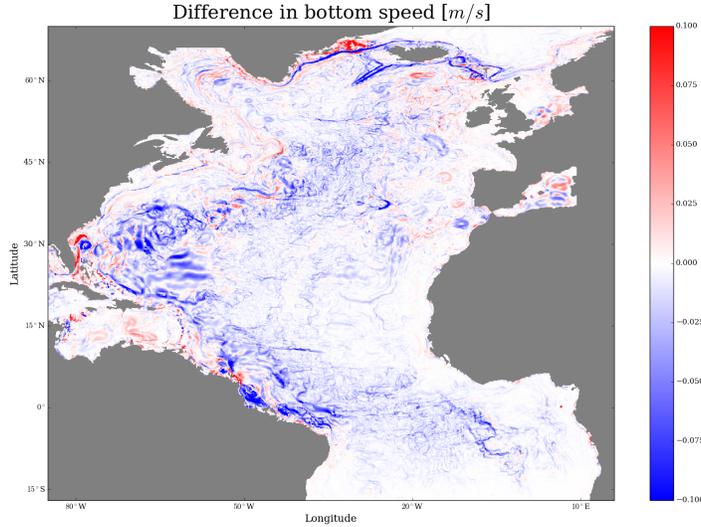


Figure 5.18: The difference in bottom velocity shows a general sink of bottom momentum over the model domain, but especially in the Western and Northern Atlantic.

1917 flux is present, there is however a clear correlation between the pseudo-momentum
 1918 flux and a decrease in velocity.

1919 The fact that the correlation between velocity differences and pseudo-momentum
 1920 flux caused by lee waves is clear in some regions, while not clear in
 1921 others, is also the reason why only depths below 1000m is shown in Fig. 5.19. At
 1922 shallower depths velocities will be higher and fluctuations associated with a varying
 1923 eddy fields will be more apparent, while the effect of lee waves will be smaller and
 1924 less clear. This pattern will of course differ from region to region, since the depth of
 1925 the ocean varies. Velocity differences caused by lee waves are thus difficult to obtain
 1926 as a function of depth. Nonetheless, the velocity difference $\Delta|U| = |U_{1075}| - |U_{ctrl}|$
 1927 is plotted at four different depths, 4000m (*bottom right panel*), 3000m (*bottom left*
 1928 *panel*), 2000m (*upper right panel*), and 1000m (*upper left panel*), in Fig. 5.20 in order
 1929 to assess the capacity of lee waves to remove momentum as a function of depth.
 1930 The varying ocean depth should here be kept in mind. At 4000m depth the largest
 1931 decrease in velocity occurs in the western Atlantic, and interestingly the decrease in
 1932 this area persists fairly clearly at 3000m and even at 2000m depth. The region
 1933 coincides very well with the region of large bottom stress highlighted in Fig. 5.3-5.23.
 1934 Decreases in other regions at 4000m depth are also visible at 3000m although less
 1935 clearly, and at 2000m and 1000 they are not very apparent. At 1000m on the other
 1936 hand it becomes just possible to see a clear decrease in velocity southwest of Ice-

5.2. EFFECT OF A LEE WAVE MODULE - DIFFERENCE FROM CONTROL RUN

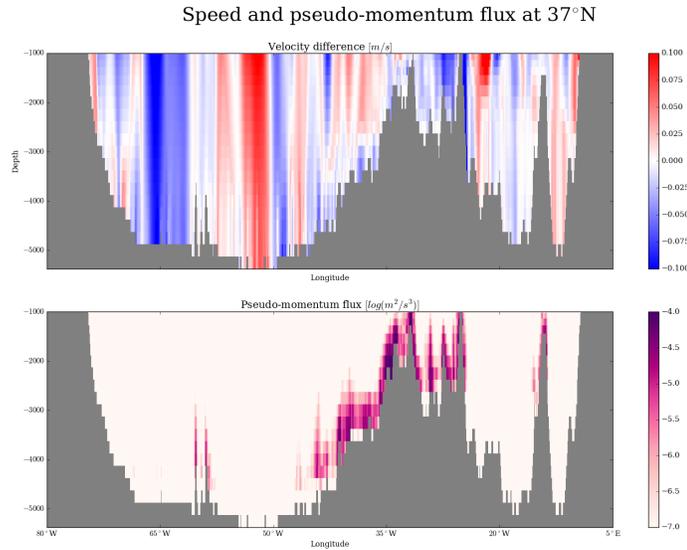


Figure 5.19: The difference in velocity between experiment *I075* and the control a 37°N is clearly negative where the pseudo-momentum flux is largest over the Mid Atlantic Ridge, showing the effect of lee waves.

1937 land, which also coincide very precisely with an area of large bottom stress in Fig.
1938 5.3.

1939 The direct influence of lee waves on the mean flow field is thus in general fairly
1940 clear. A decrease in bottom speed is clearly visible in almost all regions where lee
1941 wave generation is permitted by the topography data, and in many regions the de-
1942 crease is as large as 0.1m/s . Considering the magnitudes of the the bottom speed
1943 presented in Fig. 5.2 these are very large decreases. Although a few regions where
1944 no pseudo-momentum flux is present does show fairly large velocity differences, the
1945 correlation between a decrease in velocity and a large bottom stress is very apparent.
1946 This is most easily seen in the western Atlantic, where a significant decrease in ve-
1947 locity persists from the bottom to 2000m depth and coincides very well with a large
1948 bottom stress caused by lee waves. Away from the bottom smaller local fluctuations
1949 become more and the effect of lee waves less apparent in most regions.

1950 5.2.4 Intermediate conclusions on the differences between the 1951 base experiment and the control run

1952 All in all, the effect of adding a lee wave module are very large on both the mean flow
1953 and the background internal wave field. Near the bottom - at whatever depth this is -
1954 significant momentum is removed from the mean flow resulting in decreases in bot-

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

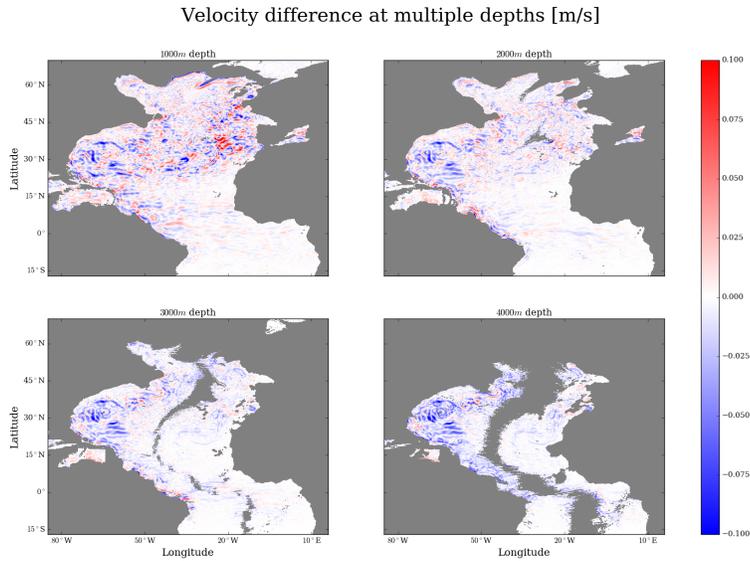


Figure 5.20: Velocity difference $\Delta|U| = |U|_{ctrl} - |U|_{I075}$ at four different depths. *bottom right panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-4000}$. Here the largest decrease is found in the western Atlantic. *Bottom left panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-3000}$, where the decrease in the western Atlantic persist clearly. Decreases found at 4000m in other regions does not as clearly persist. *Upper right panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-2000}$, where smaller local fluctuations emerge and the effect of lee waves is less clear. The decrease in the western Atlantic does still persist to some degree, though. *Upper left panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-1000}$, where the effect of lee waves is even more unclear, although a few areas of clear decrease in the central Atlantic. At this depth a clear decrease southwest of Iceland, which coincide with a region of large bottom stress, is also just possible to see.

1955 tom velocities of 0.1 m/s in many regions. Furthermore, the internal wave field have
 1956 been shown to increase by up to 5 times in regions where a large lee wave energy
 1957 transfer is present. Even though such energy transfer takes place almost exclusively
 1958 near the bottom, the increase in internal wave energy persists throughout the water
 1959 column. The effect of this is to increase the diffusivity in the interior - where it can
 1960 be increased by an order of magnitude - rather than near the bottom, although the
 1961 largest numerical differences in diffusivity is seen to be more closely correlated with
 1962 change sin the buoyancy frequency.

1963 5.3 Sensitivity to lee wave parameters

1964 Whereas the previous two sections have focused on the base experiment and the
 1965 difference between it and the control experiment, the following section will eluci-

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

1966 date the difference between the topography sensitivity experiments themselves. In
 1967 all cases the base experiment, $I075$, has been used as a reference, and as such a dif-
 1968 ference in a certain quantity between the base experiment and another experiment,
 1969 EXP , are calculated as $\Delta X = X_{EXP} - X_{I075}$, meaning that positive differences (in
 1970 bottom energy flux, for instance) indicate that the experiment in question shown
 1971 larger magnitudes of the quantity in question than the base experiment and vice
 1972 versa.

1973 5.3.1 Sensitivity of the energy flux

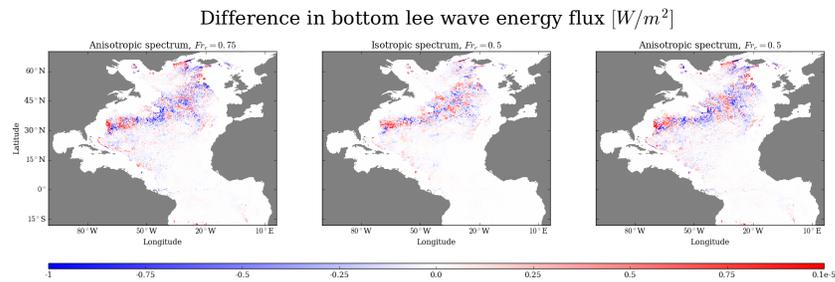


Figure 5.21: The difference in the lee wave energy flux at the bottom is largest along the North Atlantic Current and in the Denmark Strait. The sign of the difference vary locally, however.

1974 The difference in lee wave energy flux at the bottom between the four topogra-
 1975 phy sensitivity experiments is shown in Fig. 5.21. The the energy flux in the base
 1976 experiment - which is shown in Fig. 5.1 - was used as a reference, and the three im-
 1977 ages show the difference in energy flux between the base and the other three topog-
 1978 raphy sensitivity experiments; the *left panel* shows the difference with experiment
 1979 $A075$, *middle panel* with $I05$, and *right panel* with $A05$. The magnitude of the differ-
 1980 ence between the runs is locally up to the order $\mathcal{O}(10^{-5}) W / m^{-2}$, which amounts to
 1981 roughly to 10% of the flux, but it seems like the difference is in general more clearly
 1982 visible when the topography spectrum is changed, rather than when the critical in-
 1983 verse Froude Number is changed. It is not obvious from Fig. 5.21, however, if one
 1984 parameter setting produces a significantly larger flux than another.

1985 The difference is in all cases largest along the North Atlantic current and in the
 1986 Denmark Strait (where the flux itself is also largest) but the sign of the difference
 1987 here varies very locally. In the eastern and tropical Atlantic and in the Southern
 1988 Atlantic basin the difference is at least an order of magnitude lower. In other words,
 1989 no region systematically exhibits a neither lower nor higher bottom energy. There
 1990 is rather a clear geographical correlation between the magnitude of the energy flux
 1991 in one experiment and the magnitude of the difference between experiments. The
 1992 fact that the sign of the difference vary locally, while the magnitude of the difference
 1993 is the same regardless of the sign (for instance along the North Atlantic Current),

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

1994 seems to indicate that using the anisotropic spectrum instead of the isotropic does
1995 not produce substantially different results. Rather, the sign of the difference seems
1996 locally to be resemble a natural variance which is to be expected.

1997 The bottom energy flux integrates to roughly $0.06TW$ over the model domain
1998 in all four topography sensitivity experiments and this total energy flux differ only a
1999 few percentages the experiments in between. A globally integrated lee wave energy
2000 flux at the bottom between $F_{glob,A075} = 0.0612TW$ and $F_{I05} = 0.0641TW$ shows a
2001 significant contribution to the energy cycle of the ocean in all regards. The horizon-
2002 tally integrated energy flux is summarized in table 5.1. Although the differences are
2003 only of a few percentages, there is a systematic increase both when using isotropic
2004 rather than the anisotropic topography spectrum and when using a critical inverse
2005 Froude Number of $Fr_c = 0.5$ rather than $Fr_c = 0.75$. Although small the systematic
2006 increase with a lower critical inverse Froude Number is intuitive, since a higher crit-
2007 ical inverse Froude Number would act to suppress lee wave generation on a larger
2008 amount of the bottom flow. As such the largest difference in total energy flux be-
2009 tween all four topography sensitivity experiments is that between experiment *A075*
2010 and experiment *I05*. Between these two experiments there is a difference in total
2011 lee wave energy flux of $0.0029TW$, which roughly corresponds to 4.5% of the total
2012 energy flux.

2013 To put these differences into perspective, I quickly remind the reader, that
2014 the additional two experiments using coarser resolution models - the $1/3^\circ$ eddy-
2015 permitting FLAME model of the North Atlantic and the 2° coarse resolution global
2016 model - both carried out using the isotropic topography spectrum and critical in-
2017 verse Froude Number $Fr_c = 0.75$ showed a global lee wave energy flux of $F_{glob,1/3^\circ} =$
2018 $0.0117TW$ and $F_{glob,2^\circ} = 2.93MW$ respectively. Comparing with the results from the
2019 topography sensitivity experiments clearly validates that the lee wave energy flux is
2020 significantly increased with a finer horizontal resolution most likely to be associ-
2021 ated with resolving the eddy field and as a result thereof a stronger bottom flow. In
2022 a coarse resolution model a parameterized lee wave energy flux ought thus to be
2023 dependent on the eddy kinetic energy.

2024 5.3.2 Sensitivity of the bottom stress

2025 Similar to Fig. 5.21, the difference between the four experiments in bottom lee wave
2026 stress is shown in Fig. 5.22, where as previously the *left panel* shows the difference
2027 with experiment *A075*, the *middle panel* with *I05*, and the *right panel* with experi-
2028 ment *A05*. It is obvious that changing the topographic spectrum has a much larger
2029 influence than changing the critical Froude number. There is hardly any geograph-
2030 ical bias, since the bottom lee wave stress increases in basically every region if us-
2031 ing the anisotropic topography spectrum rather than the isotropic, and since sign
2032 of the difference between the base and experiment *I05* varies locally. Nonetheless,
2033 the western Atlantic and the Denmark Strait are two regions where both the bottom
2034 stress, the energy flux and their respective differences the experiments between are
2035 among the largest. The bottom stress in these two regions, which are specifically
2036 marked out as black boxes in Fig. 5.3, have been examined closer in order to exem-

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

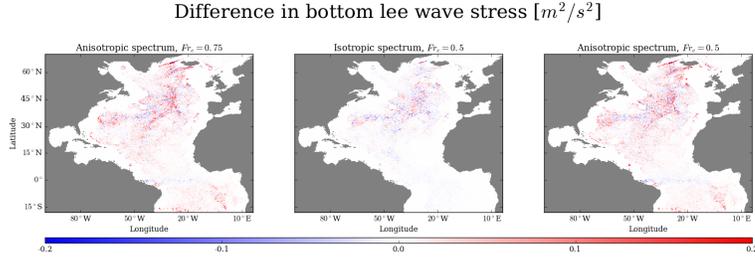


Figure 5.22: The difference in bottom lee wave stress, $F_{diff} = F_{exp} - F_{base}$, between the base lee wave run $F_{base} = F_{I075}$ and the other three experiments is clearly largest when the topographic spectrum is changed rather than the critical Froude number.

2037 plify the differences highlighted in Fig. 5.22.

2038 The square of the magnitude of the bottom stress from experiment $I075$ was
 2039 used as a reference, $\tau_{I075}^2 = \tau_{x,I075}^2 + \tau_{y,I075}^2$, and is plotted against the square of the
 2040 magnitude of the bottom stress from the other three topography sensitivity experi-
 2041 ments in Fig. 5.23. As such, the top row shows bottom stresses in the Western At-
 2042 lantic region and the bottom row shows that in the Denmark Strait region. In all
 2043 cases τ_{I075}^2 is plotted along the x-axis and the square of the magnitude of the bottom
 2044 stress of the other experiment and region in question is plotted along the y-axis. The
 2045 *upper and lower left panel* shows bottom stress τ_{A075}^2 , the *upper and lower middle*
 2046 *panel* shows bottom stress τ_{I05}^2 , and the *upper and lower right panel* shows bottom
 2047 stress τ_{A05}^2 . A single dot in the figure thus represent the bottom stresses of a single
 2048 (bottom) grid point in the two experiments and regions in question. Noticing the
 2049 different axis values in the upper and lower rows it is first of all clear that the stress
 2050 are larger in the Denmark Strait than in the western Atlantic. The most important
 2051 aspect to notice, however, is first of all that the difference in bottom stress brought
 2052 about by changing the topography spectrum is much larger than that of the Froude
 2053 Number. This is clear since there is systematically a longer distance from every dot
 2054 to the diagonal line representing equal stresses in the panels comparing the base
 2055 experiment with experiments $A075$ and $A05$ than that comparing the base experi-
 2056 ment with experiment $I05$. This is the case in both regions. Second of all, it is clear
 2057 that the bottom stress is increased when changing the topography spectrum. The
 2058 bottom stress is inherently shifted towards larger values when changing the topog-
 2059 raphy spectrum, whereas the bottom stress is neither increased nor decreased sig-
 2060 nificantly when changing the critical Froude Number. This image is also apparent
 2061 in both regions.

2062 In the same regions the angle of the bottom stress with the horizontal was also
 2063 examined. Fig. 5.24 compares the angles obtained in experiment $I075$ with the
 2064 other three topography sensitivity experiments as a histogram. As in Fig. 5.23 the
 2065 upper panels contains the angles obtained in the western Atlantic, whereas angles
 2066 obtained in the Denmark Strait are plotted in the bottom panels.

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

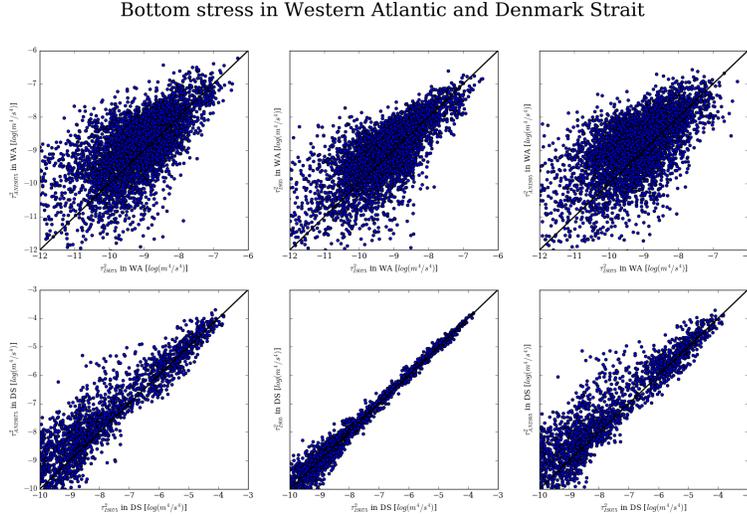


Figure 5.23: Difference in bottom stresses in the four topography sensitivity experiments are shown for two distinct regions; the western Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. Upper panels shows bottom stress in the western Atlantic and bottom panels the Denmark Strait. τ_{I075}^2 is plotted along the x-axis in all panels - in the *leftmost panels* against τ_{A075}^2 , in the *middle panels* against τ_{I05}^2 , and in the *rightmost panels* against τ_{A05}^2 . A single dot represents the (square of) the bottom stress in the respective experiments. Changing the topography spectrum clearly shifts the bottom stress towards larger values, whereas changing the critical Froude Number does not significantly change the bottom stress.

2067 Each panel is a histogram showing the number of bottom grid points on the y-
 2068 axis with an angle of bottom stress within a certain range as shown by the x-axis. The
 2069 dark green color of bars indicate the number of grid points within a certain range of
 2070 bottom stress angle, which both experiments in question had. A light green color
 2071 above the dark green in a certain angle range indicates that the base experiment had
 2072 such a number of grid points more than the other experiment in question, whereas
 2073 a blue color above the dark green indicate that the other experiment in question had
 2074 such number of grid points more than the base experiment.

2075 In the western Atlantic (*upper panels*) the angle of the stress, θ , is predominantly
 2076 directed in the half-space $[-\pi, 0]$, i.e. southwards. The stresses of experiments *I075*,
 2077 *A075* and *A05* are directed in a very similar manner, but the differences between ex-
 2078 periments *I075* and *I05* display a fairly clear rotation of the stress from southward
 2079 towards the East. The biggest difference in the direction of the stress thus clearly
 2080 occurs when the critical Froude Number is changed. In the Denmark strait (*lower*
 2081 *panels*) the change with the critical Froude Number appears to be minimal, though.
 2082 The *lower middle panel* containing the stresses from experiments *I075* and *I05* are

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

2083 remarkably similar and so are the differences shown in the *lower left* and lower right
 2084 panels indicating basically no change with the critical Froude Number. There is
 2085 on the other hand a systematic change in angle with the topography spectrum in
 2086 the Denmark Strait. In the half-space $[0; \pi]$ angles are switched from northwards to
 2087 eastwards and in the half-space $[-\pi; 0]$ the angles are shifted westward direction,
 2088 although this change is not as prominent as that in the other half-space. In other
 2089 words stress angle is shifted towards an even more meridional direction, than was
 2090 already the case, when using the anisotropic spectrum instead of the isotropic one.

2091 Overall this indicates that a possible systematic change in angle with either to-
 2092 pography spectrum or critical Froude Number is very much dependent on the re-
 2093 gion in question. In the western Atlantic there is no clear systematic change with to-
 2094 pography, since the *upper left panel* shows the smallest differences in angle, whereas
 2095 in the Denmark Strait the shift of the bottom stress is very systematic with topogra-
 2096 phy.

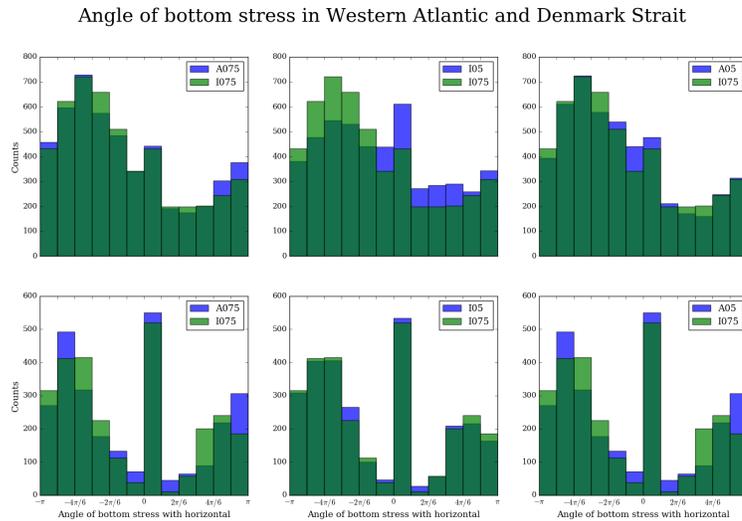


Figure 5.24: Angle of the bottom stress with horizontal for two distinct regions; the western Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. *Upper panels* show the direction of the stress in the western Atlantic. The difference between the respective experiments is largest between experiment *I075* and *I05*, where there is a clear rotation of the stress towards the East. This rotation is not apparent in any of the other experiments. The *lower panels* show the direction of the stress in the Denmark Strait. Here the change with the critical Froude Number is minimal, but there is a systematic change with the topography spectrum. This is concluded from the very low differences seen in the *lower middle panel* and the large similarities between the *lower left* and *lower right* panels. Overall the change in direction of the bottom stress with either topography or critical Froude Number thus depends on the region examined.

5.3. SENSITIVITY TO LEE WAVE PARAMETERS

2097 Contrary to the integrated bottom energy flux the magnitude of the bottom lee
2098 wave stress differs substantially between the topography sensitivity experiments -
2099 up to 40% - when using the anisotropic spectrum rather than the isotropic. This is
2100 also the case for both the x- and y-component of the stress. Where the x-component
2101 decreases by up to $10^{10} m^4/s^2$ over the model domain - or up to 65% of the base
2102 x-stress, the y-component increases (numerically) by $3.5 \cdot 10^{10} m^4/s^2$, resulting in a
2103 larger magnitude of the stress caused by the lee waves. This image of a decrease
2104 in the x-component of the stress but a larger increase in the y-component of the
2105 stress is persistent in the isotropic vs. anisotropic comparisons no matter the criti-
2106 cal Froude number. The globally, i.e. vertically and horizontally, integrated pseudo-
2107 momentum flux, $T_{glob} = \int_x \int_y \int_z \tau \partial x \partial y \partial z$, has also been computed for the four to-
2108 pography sensitivity experiments and is shown in the two last rows in table 5.1. It
2109 is noticeable here that the large differences in the bottom stress are not only dimin-
2110 ished in magnitude, they are even of opposite sign when integrating the momentum
2111 flux in the vertical with the four experiments varying only in critical Froude number
2112 and topography spectrum. Within the four topography sensitivity experiments the
2113 maximum of the difference in globally integrated pseudo-momentum flux is thus
2114 4.35% of $T_{glob,1075}$.

2115 The lee wave energy as a function of depth can be seen for all four topography
2116 sensitivity experiments in Fig. 5.25. This figure reinforce the zonally averaged im-
2117 age, and it is clear that far most of the lee wave energy is found below 3000m. Notice
2118 how the experiments using the anisotropic spectrum seem to have a slightly larger
2119 fraction of lee wave energy at depths below 4000m. This would indicate that an
2120 even large fraction of the lee wave energy is generated at the very deep ocean in
2121 the anisotropic cases, whereas in the isotropic cases a larger fraction would be gen-
2122 erated at shallower depths, since the total lee wave flux at the bottom is of similar
2123 magnitude. Despite this, the distribution of lee wave energy with depth is remark-
2124 ably similar across the experiments and reinforce the point already made that the
2125 lee wave generation seem insensitive to the topography parameters.

2126 **5.3.3 Intermediate conclusions on the topography sensitivity**

2127 All in all the lee wave generation seems to shows little sensitivity to changing the
2128 topography spectrum and the critical inverse Froude Number. A maximum differ-
2129 ence in the total energy flux (integrated over the model domain) of 4.5% between the
2130 experiments is not significant considering a natural variance is to be expected, al-
2131 though the sensitivity is systematic with varying both the topography and the critical
2132 inverse Froude Number. Regarding the stress exerted by the lee waves on the mean
2133 flow, the sensitivity with topography parameters is more complicated. The zonal
2134 component of the bottom stress is significantly reduced when using the anisotropic
2135 topography spectrum instead of the isotropic, but the meridional component is nu-
2136 merically increased a lot more in order to increase the magnitude of the bottom
2137 stress with the anisotropic topography spectrum by up to 38.6% of that of the base
2138 experiment . This could point towards the bottom stress being shifted towards the
2139 meridional direction, but this has proven to be dependent on the region in ques-
2140 tion. When also considering the vertical dimension the stress exerted by lee waves

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

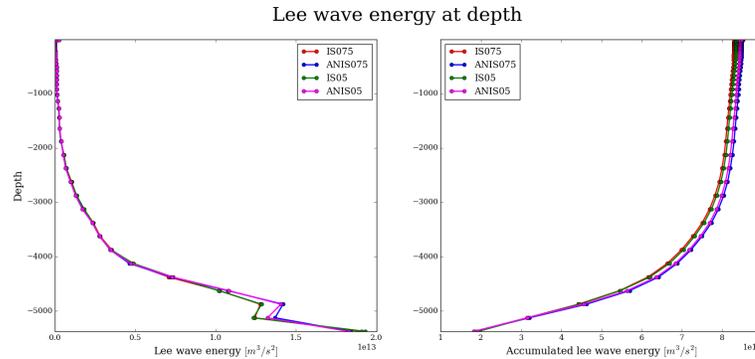


Figure 5.25: Amount of lee wave energy at each depth index (*left panel*) and the cumulative lee wave energy (*right panel*). Most lee wave energy is found in the deep ocean, and only about 10% at depths shallower than 2000m

2141 on the mean flow is suddenly not nearly as sensitive to the topography parameters,
 2142 with the magnitude of the total pseudo-momentum flux (horizontally and vertically
 2143 integrated) varying only with a maximum 4.35% of that of the base experiment.

2144 5.4 Sensitivity to IDEMIX parameters

2145 Pollmann et al. (2017) evaluated the internal wave energy as simulated by the
 2146 IDEMIX model and compared it with that estimated from ARGO-float data in or-
 2147 der to determine optimal values of the three IDEMIX parameters μ_0 , j_{star} and τ_v . In
 2148 short the parameter values used by Olbers and Eden (2013) led to too little internal
 2149 wave energy simulated by IDEMIX compared with the ARGO data, and new param-
 2150 eter values were to remedy that. Besides the four topography sensitivity experiment,
 2151 two additional experiments using the IDEMIX parameter values found in Pollmann
 2152 et al. (2017) were carried out - one with the isotropic spectrum and one with the
 2153 anisotropic spectrum, and both with $Fr_c = 0.75$ - were also conducted. The purpose
 2154 of these two additional experiments was to investigate the sensitivity of the lee wave
 2155 field to the IDEMIX parameters, and to estimate whether the internal wave energy
 2156 was in accordance with the ARGO data.

2157 The vertically integrated lee wave energy for these two experiments along with
 2158 that of the base lee wave experiment is shown in Fig. 5.26

2159 Despite the fact that the energy flux at the bottom is not changed much with
 2160 the new IDEMIX parameters - this is shown in table 5.1 with a decrease of 1.90%
 2161 and 3.15% for the isotropic and anisotropic spectrum respectively - the vertically
 2162 integrated lee wave energy is in many regions an order of magnitude larger. This
 2163 image is similar in the vertically integrated background internal wave energy shown
 2164 in Fig. 5.27, which is in correspondance with the findings of Pollmann et al. (2017).

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

Vertically integrated lee wave energy

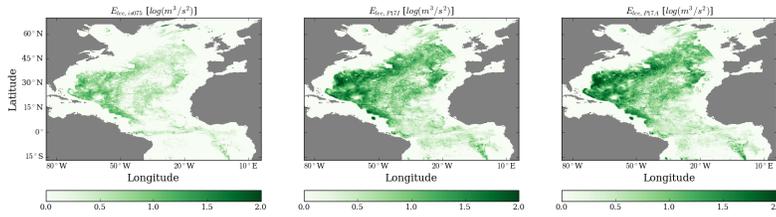


Figure 5.26: The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy in the base experiment (*I075*, isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spectrum (*P17I*) and the *right panel* shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic spectrum (*P17A*). The lee wave energy is larger throughout the entire model domain using the parameters values of Pollmann et al. (2017)

Vertically integrated internal wave energy

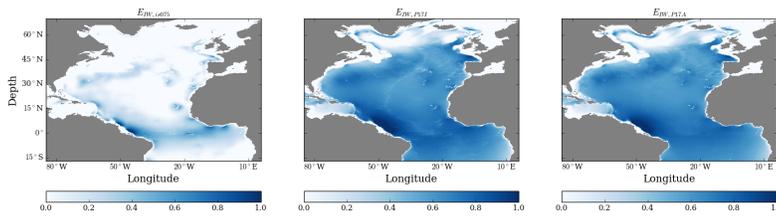


Figure 5.27: The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated internal wave energy in the base experiment (*I075*, isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spectrum, *P17I* and the *right panel* shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic spectrum, *P17A*

2165 The horizontally integrated lee wave energy and the energy transfer to the inter-
 2166 nal wave compartment and to/from the mean flow is shown as a function of depth
 2167 for all experiments in Fig. 5.28. First of all it is very clear that changing the IDEMIX
 2168 parameters significantly increases the lee wave energy at most depths. This does
 2169 not, however, increase the energy transfer to the background internal wave field,
 2170 since this transfer is directly affected by the α - and therefore the IDEMIX param-
 2171 eters. As compared to the lee wave energy this energy transfer is shifted vertically,
 2172 which can be an effect of both the α -parameter and the background internal wave
 2173 energy. The energy exchange with the mean flow is much smaller than the transfer
 2174 to the internal wave field at most depths, but above 1000m depth an energy transfer
 2175 to the mean flow is also significant. Taking the vertically integrated transfer shown in

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

2176 Fig. 5.13 into account, this is most certainly due to the energy transfer taking place
2177 in the Denmark Strait. Furthermore, Fig. 5.28, clearly shows that the lee wave energy
2178 and the energy transfers are much more affected by changing the IDEMIX param-
2179 eters rather than both the topography spectrum and the critical Froude number. At all
2180 depths where the largest differences between the experiments are found, the largest
2181 differences are found between those with the IDEMIX parameters from Pollmann
2182 et al. (2017) and the topography sensitivity experiments rather than between exper-
2183 iments differing in topography spectrum. In the bottom most four model layers the
2184 energy transfer is reduced by roughly 20 – 30% when using the new IDEMIX param-
2185 eters as compared to the original ones, whereas the lee wave energy itself is roughly
2186 tripled. In this figure it is important to remember that energy is not transferred at all
2187 depths in all regions. The bottom flux does not occur at equal depths, and the hori-
2188 zontal distribution of lee wave energy as shown in Fig. 5.26 should be taken into ac-
2189 count, when forming an image of the distribution of lee wave energy. Furthermore,
2190 it might be tempting to view the energy transfer as a result of the lee wave energy
2191 itself, but the reverse image is perhaps more elucidating. Rather than considering a
2192 large energy transfer a result of a large amount of energy present, the large amount
2193 of lee wave energy should be considered the consequence of a small energy trans-
2194 fer. This explains the differences in lee wave energy and energy transfer between the
2195 four topography sensitivity experiments and those with the Pollmann et al. (2017)
2196 IDEMIX parameters; the energy transfer to the background internal wave compart-
2197 ment is lower below 4000m depth, and precisely because of this is the lee wave en-
2198 ergy larger.

2199 As was done with the four topography sensitivity experiments, the lee wave en-
2200 ergy and diffusivity was examined in a transect at $37^\circ N$ using the new IDEMIX pa-
2201 rameters. The lee wave energy at $37^\circ N$ is shown in Fig. 5.29, where the upper panel
2202 contains the lee wave energy of the base experiment, *I075*, the middle is the lee
2203 wave energy of experiment *P17I* and the lower panel is that of experiment *P17A*.
2204 Clearly both experiments using the new IDEMIX parameters show a more energetic
2205 lee wave field, and the difference between the two is not large. There might be a
2206 slightly lower decay with above the bottom in experiments *P17I* and *P17A*, but the
2207 horizontal distribution is very similar throughout all three experiments. In general
2208 the lee wave energy is simply higher at all depths in experiments *P17I* and *P17A*.

2209 A central part of the implementation of lee waves in an ocean circulation model,
2210 would be the effect lee waves cause on diapycnal diffusivity. As the differences in
2211 both lee wave energy flux and energy transfer to the internal wave domain have
2212 been very small across the four topography sensitivity experiments, the diffusivity at
2213 a certain latitude has not been shown for all these four experiments. Since, however,
2214 the lee wave field changes significantly with the IDEMIX parameters, the differences
2215 in diffusivity between experiments using the original IDEMIX parameters, the pa-
2216 rameters of Pollmann et al. (2017) and the diffusivity from the control run without
2217 lee waves is warranted. Fig. 5.30 shows the diffusivity at $37^\circ N$ from base experi-
2218 ment *I075* (*upper left*), *P17I* (*upper right*), *P17A* (*lower left*), and from the control
2219 run without lee waves (*lower right*). In the case of no lee waves the diffusivity is at
2220 many longitudes near the bottom between $0.1 m^2/s$ and $0.01 m^2/s$. This magnitude
2221 is replicated quite similarly in all the three experiments with lee waves, which corre-

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

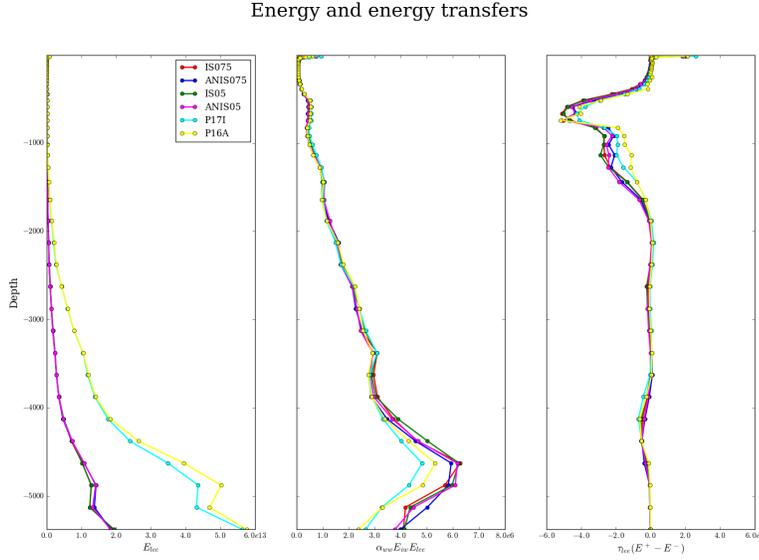


Figure 5.28: The lee wave energy (*left panel*) is much larger in the experiments P17I and P17A than in the rest of the experiments. This does not result in a larger energy transfer to the background internal wave domain (*middle panel*), however. This is due to the α -parameter being directly affected by the new IDEMIX parameters. In general the energy transfer to the internal wave domain is shifted vertically as compared to the lee wave energy. The energy transfer to the mean flow (*right panel*) is very similar in all experiments, and below 2000m depth much smaller than that to the internal wave compartment. At roughly 700 to 500m depth the two energy transfer are of equal magnitude (integrated over the model domain)

2222 sponds well with Fig. 5.14. Here it was shown that the diffusivity difference between
 2223 the control run and the base experiment $\kappa_{I075} - \kappa_{ctrl}$ could be as large as $0.1 m^2/s$
 2224 but of either sign near the bottom. In Fig. 5.30 it is clearly shown that the diffusivity
 2225 is in all cases of similar magnitude near the bottom. It is, however, also clear that the
 2226 diffusivity away from the bottom is often a factor of 10 larger in experiments I075,
 2227 P17I and P17A than in the control run (similar result were found for the three ex-
 2228 periments A075, I05, A05 although not shown here). In all panels there are several
 2229 areas above roughly 1500m depth where the diffusivity is somewhat irregular. These
 2230 patches seem unrelated to the lee wave energy and are present in all cases, why they
 2231 are could be a result of meridional transfer diffusivity by the background internal
 2232 gravity wave field.

2233 The increase in diffusivity is even slightly more apparent in experiment I075
 2234 than in experiments P17I and P17A, indicating that the IDEMIX parameters of Poll-
 2235 mann et al. (2017) will cause the lee wave field to provide slightly less energy for

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

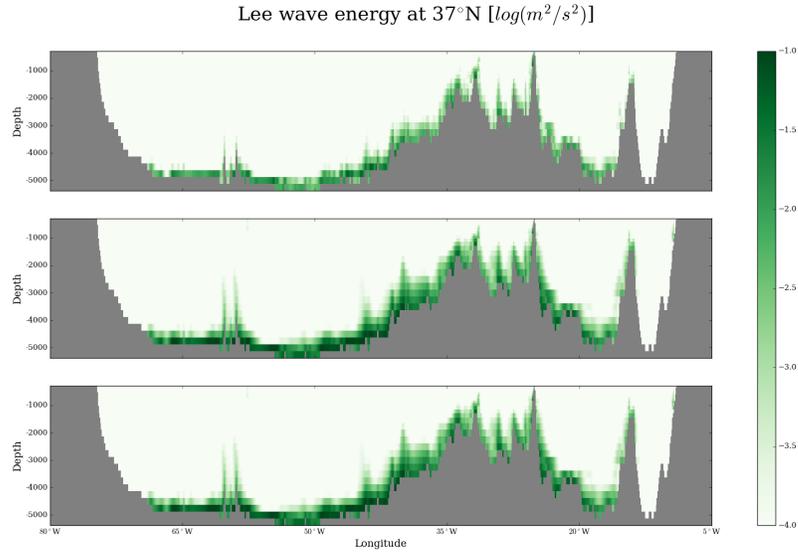


Figure 5.29: The *upper panel* lee wave energy at 37°N in the base experiment (I075, isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with P17 IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spectrum, P17I and the *lower panel* shows it with the P17 IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic spectrum, P17A

2236 mixing. This effect is also apparent from Fig. 5.13, where the transfer to the internal
 2237 wave compartment is visibly lower below 4000m depth for the experiments P17I
 2238 and P17A. As mentioned before, this is due to the α -parameter being decreased. An
 2239 increase in diffusivity in the interior ocean as an effect of the addition of lee waves
 2240 is, nonetheless, not a straightforward result, but it reinforces the image - which was
 2241 shown in Fig. 5.14 and Fig. 5.15 - that even though the energy transfer to the internal
 2242 wave compartment is by far largest near the bottom, the internal wave energy - and
 2243 therefore also the diffusivity - is increased throughout water column. The emphasis
 2244 should here as much be put on the vertical propagation of internal wave energy as
 2245 on the energy transfer from lee waves.

2246 The new IDEMIX parameters of Pollmann et al. (2017) does thus have an influ-
 2247 ence on the lee wave energy, although the influence is not as clear as on the back-
 2248 ground internal wave energy. The increase in the lee wave energy can be explained
 2249 via the balance between the energy flux at the bottom and the transfer of lee wave
 2250 energy to the internal wave compartment, from which the energy can be made avail-
 2251 able for mixing. Since the energy flux at the bottom largely remain the same - inte-
 2252 grated over the entire model domain it is decreased by a few percentages when using
 2253 the IDEMIX parameters from Pollmann et al. (2017) - the total energy transfer away

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

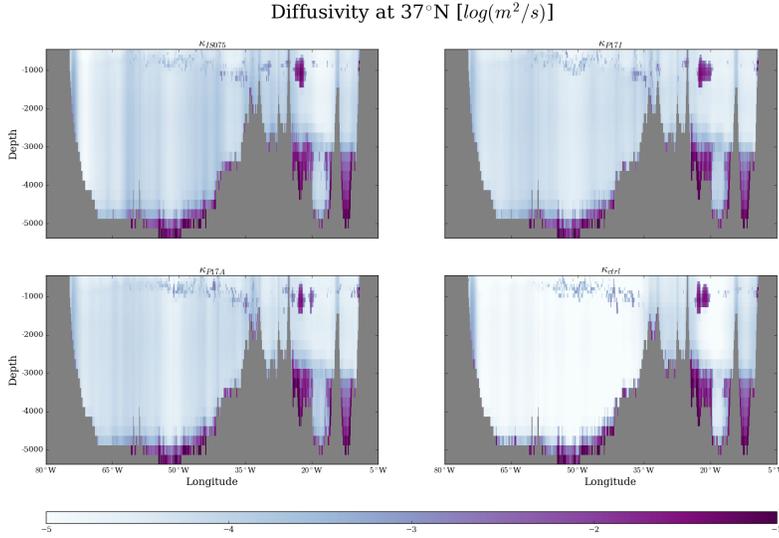


Figure 5.30: The diffusivity at $37^\circ N$ in the three experiments *I075* (upper left), *P17I* (upper right), *P17A* (lower left), and in the control run without lee waves (lower right). In all cases the diffusivity is of similar magnitude near the bottom, but away from the bottom it is in general a factor of 10 (or more) larger in the three experiments with lee waves.

2254 from the lee wave compartment will remain similar as well. This energy transfer is
 2255 dominated by that to the internal wave compartment, which is determined by the
 2256 product $\alpha_{ww} E_{GM} E_{lee}$ in Eq. 2.46, where $\alpha_{ww} = \mu_0 |f_e| / c_{star}^2$. With the new IDEMIX
 2257 parameters, α_{ww} is decreased by a factor of 8, and to keep the dissipation at the
 2258 same level the energy of the background internal wave field and the energy con-
 2259 tained in the lee wave field will thus increase. Since the bottom energy flux does
 2260 not change much in between the different experiments, it is most illuminating to
 2261 consider the differences in the vertically integrated lee wave energy as a result of a
 2262 change in the energy transfer away from the lee wave compartment, rather than the
 2263 transfer being the result of the lee wave energy. Additionally because of the decrease
 2264 in energy transfer to the internal wave compartment, the diffusivity in the interior
 2265 is also lower in experiments *P17I* and *P17A* than in the four topography sensitivity
 2266 experiments, although it is still higher than in the control run. All in all, a chang-
 2267 ing of the IDEMIX parameters seems to have a larger influence on both the lee wave
 2268 energy, energy transfer and diffusivity, than the differences arising due to using dif-
 2269 ferent topography spectrum or critical Froude Number.

2270 The difference in bottom stress using the new IDEMIX parameters exhibits the
 2271 same pattern as the other experiments; using the anisotropic topography spectrum

5.4. SENSITIVITY TO IDEMIX PARAMETERS

2272 decreases the zonal component of the bottom stress, but increases the meridional
 2273 component much more resulting in a large increase in the magnitude of the bottom
 2274 stress relative to the isotropic spectrum. Despite the fact that the bottom stress ex-
 2275 hibits differences relatively similar to those found with the original parameters, the
 2276 (horizontally and vertically) integrated pseudo-momentum flux is increased with
 2277 respectively 27.9% (isotropic spectrum) and 19.3% (anisotropic spectrum) with the
 2278 new IDEMIX parameters. This is a significant increase. The vertically integrated
 2279 pseudo-momentum flux is shown in Fig. 5.31. As with the lee wave energy the
 2280 pseudo-momentum flux is also generally increased over the entire domain. Espe-
 2281 cially in the western and central Atlantic is the pseudo-momentum flux increased,
 2282 while there might be a slight decrease in the northern Atlantic.

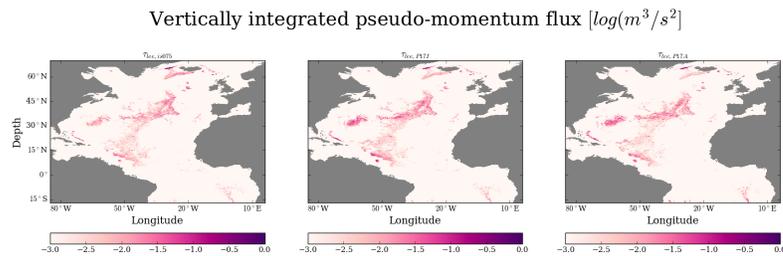


Figure 5.31: The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux using the original IDEMIX parameters, isotropic topography spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$. The *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spectrum (*P17I*) and the *right panel* shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic spectrum (*P17A*)

2283 Changing the IDEMIX parameters thus have a significant effect on the lee wave
 2284 field. The vertically integrated lee wave energy is in many regions increased by an
 2285 order of magnitude compared to the base experiment, and in general the lee wave
 2286 energy is at all depths below $4000m$ between three and four times as large in exper-
 2287 iments *P17I* and *P17A* than in the base experiments. This increase in energy is not
 2288 despite providing less energy per time for mixing, but because the energy per time
 2289 provided for mixing is decreased. A decreased energy transfer also result in a lower
 2290 diffusivity in experiments *P17I* and *P17A* than in the base experiment, although it
 2291 is still higher than in the control run. The more energetic lee wave field does, how-
 2292 ever, remove more momentum from the mean flow. These changes are significantly
 2293 larger than the changes brought about from simply changing the topography spec-
 2294 trum or the critical Froude Number, although the general pattern of the differences
 2295 in bottom stress is similar to those caused by changing the topography spectrum
 2296 and critical Froude Number. An overview of this is also recorded in table 5.1.

2297 5.5 Comparison with ARGO-derived data

2298 Ideally the results of the global model simulation should be held up against solid
 2299 data from observations. It should in general be the aim for all modellers to hold
 2300 their results against observational data, in order to test the validity of the theoretical
 2301 assumptions and the technical implementation. If model data is not tested against
 2302 real world observations, a modeller runs the risk of only being able to show the con-
 2303 sequences of his or her assumptions, and not whether the assumptions themselves
 2304 were realistic in the first place. If not careful this can ultimately lead to the trap of
 2305 validating ones assumptions via the assumptions themselves. A model can be con-
 2306 structed in a number of ways, more or less complex and sophisticated, but the aim
 2307 is and should always be to learn something new about the real world and not only
 2308 about the model itself, which is why model results should be tested against observa-
 2309 tional data.

2310 In the real world observations of lee waves are very sparse, however. Several
 2311 studies have carried out observations of near bottom diffusivity (notably the DIMES
 2312 project in the Southern Ocean) and have called out lee waves as the prime driver
 2313 of this diffusivity, because of the conditions in the Southern Ocean being particu-
 2314 larly favourable for the generation of lee waves in this region. Despite a qualitatively
 2315 reasonable argument for lee wave driven mixing, observations do also show a dis-
 2316 crepancy between observed and predicted diffusivity (Waterman et al., 2013). But
 2317 these are only observations of the consequences of lee wave breaking or indirect or
 2318 inferred observations.

2319 Two obvious difficulties in obtaining credible estimates of lee wave driven mix-
 2320 ing are the intermittency of the waves and the process of separating them from other
 2321 internal waves. In our model we assume the spectral shape to stay close to that at the
 2322 generation site (which is given by the Bell flux) throughout the water column. This is
 2323 an assumption which might or might not hold true, but no observational evidence
 2324 exists (to the author's knowledge) to directly discredit this assumption.

2325 The ARGO program currently deploys close to 4000 floats around the world cap-
 2326 turing salinity, temperature and pressure as a function of depth, from which density
 2327 profiles can be calculated. From a Fourier transform of the strain, a measure of the
 2328 degree to which wave motions can distort isopycnals, the strain is expressed in terms
 2329 of vertical wavenumber and frequency. Using the polarization vector the energy as
 2330 a function of depth, vertical wavenumber and frequency (what is referred to as the
 2331 energy spectrum) can be expressed in terms of the strain spectrum. By factorizing
 2332 the energy spectrum into a depth dependent, vertical wavenumber dependent and a
 2333 frequency dependent part, and thereafter integrating over each domain, the internal
 2334 wave energy can be estimated from strain variance recorded by the CTD measure-
 2335 ments from the Argo floats. This method captures the effect of all wave-like motions
 2336 on density and thus make an ideal way to compare model results to real world obser-
 2337 vations of internal wave energy. The difficulty of how to separate density variations
 2338 caused by one type of wave rather than another, say lee waves and internal tides
 2339 for instance, still persists, though. The current model formulation assumes the lee
 2340 wave energy spectrum throughout the water column to be given by the Bell formula,
 2341 that is a spectral shape as that of the energy flux at the bottom, which is again de-

5.5. COMPARISON WITH ARGO-DERIVED DATA

2342 pendent on the bottom topography spectrum. In other words the spectral shape
 2343 of the lee waves is different from that other internal waves. The spectral shape of
 2344 the GM-model, as modified by Cairns and Williams (1976), is defined by two shape
 2345 functions determining the dependence on frequency and vertical wavenumber, re-
 2346 spectively. The scaling of the two shape functions depends on the so-called spectral
 2347 slope, which can be filtered in the ARGO data.

2348 If the topography spectrum is assumed isotropic the lee wave shape function
 2349 gets a (horizontal) wavenumber dependence

$$A(k, \phi) \sim \frac{k^2 U_n^2}{k^2 U_n^2 - f^2 + r^2} k^{-2\nu-1} \quad (5.1)$$

2350 where the dependence on ϕ enters via U_n . Given the relation between verti-
 2351 cal and horizontal wavenumber $m_{lee} = k(N^2 - k^2 U_n^2)^{1/2} (k^2 U_n^2 - f^2)^{-1/2}$, this does
 2352 not translate into a single power dependence on vertical wavenumber. As such, the
 2353 spectral slope of the GM-model is not present in the shape functions of lee waves,
 2354 which make the comparison of ARGO data to the model output difficult. Another
 2355 difficulty in comparing the ARGO data of internal wave energy with the modelled lee
 2356 wave energy is the depth at which the ARGO floats measure strain and shear spectra.
 2357 Pollmann (2020) estimates internal wave energy from ARGO floats over the entire
 2358 world ocean averaged in depth intervals. The map of internal wave energy provided
 2359 by the ARGO data covers a much larger area in the depth range 300 – 500m, than in
 2360 the range 1000 – 2000m. The best covered regions are the Pacific and Indian Oceans.
 2361 In this study we have focused mostly on the Atlantic and the Southern Ocean, since
 2362 this is where the lee wave generation is strongest, but these are unfortunately not
 2363 covered as well by the ARGO data. In section 5 I also highlight especially the Den-
 2364 mark Strait as an area of high lee wave activity, and this is also a region where the lee
 2365 wave generation takes place at a fairly shallow depth.

2366 The average lee wave energy, as simulated in the base experiment I075, is plotted
 2367 for four different depth bins in Fig. 5.32. The depth bins have been chosen so to
 2368 better compared the energy levels with that derived from the ARGO data as shown in
 2369 Pollmann (2020). The *upper left panel* in Fig. 5.32 shows the average lee wave energy
 2370 between 2000 and 300m depth which is considered to be the full depth range of the
 2371 ARGO floats. The remaining three images show lee wave energy in the depth ranges
 2372 2000 – 1000m (*upper right panel*), 1000 – 500m (*lower left panel*), and 500 – 300m
 2373 (*lower right panel*). In the full depth range the energy is largest in the Denmark Strait,
 2374 north Atlantic and midlatitude central Atlantic. It is apparent from the differences
 2375 between the *upper right* and *lower left* panels that the energy in most of the north
 2376 and central Atlantic is below 1000m depth. Some of the energy in the north Atlantic
 2377 is still visible between 1000 and 500m depth, but almost all the energy in the central
 2378 Atlantic is only present below 1000m depth. The lee wave energy present in the
 2379 Denmark Strait emerges somewhere between 2000 and 1000m depth but is only fully
 2380 visible above 500m depth, although the average magnitude in this region does not
 2381 really change in the different depth ranges. The energy levels derived from ARGO
 2382 data in Pollmann (2020) does not allow for much comparison below 1000m, because
 2383 the ARGO data does not fully cover all regions (the coverage is better at shallower

5.5. COMPARISON WITH ARGO-DERIVED DATA

2384 depths; especially above 1000m depth), but in the depth range 1000 – 500m some
 2385 comparison is possible although mostly in the central Atlantic. Lee wave energy
 2386 simulated in this region in this study is extremely localized, however.

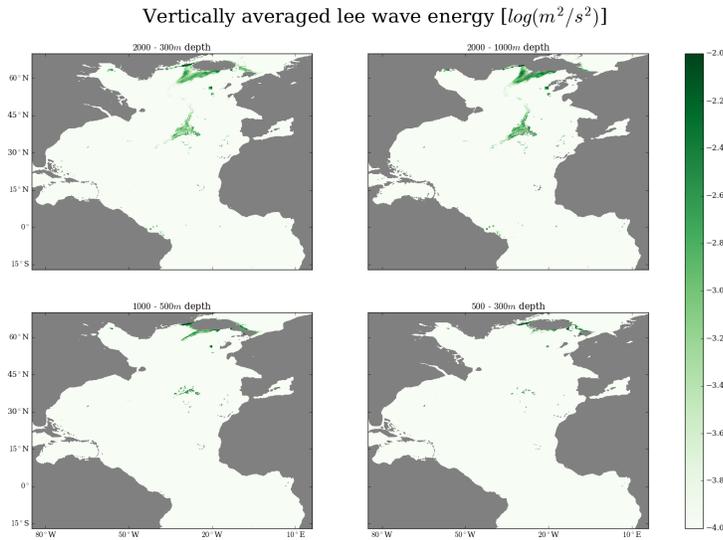


Figure 5.32: Lee wave energy has been vertically averaged in four different depth ranges in order to compare with ARGO data from Pollmann (2020). Lee wave energy in the midlatitude central Atlantic is present between 2000 and 1000m depth (*upper left panel*), where the majority of energy in the northern Atlantic is also present. In the Denmark Strait the lee wave energy emerges above 1000m (*lower left panel*) but is only fully visible above 500m depth (*lower left panel*). The average lee wave energy in the between 2000 and 300m depth is shown in the *upper left panel*, where lee wave energy in midlatitude and northern Atlantic and in the Denmark Strait is largest. The energy levels at these depths are not easily compared with those found by Pollmann (2020), since internal wave energy derived from ARGO data does not fully cover all these regions at the depths in questions. In the particular regions and depths where comparison is possible, energy levels here do not contradict those derived from ARGO data.

2387 The energy levels derived from ARGO data in mid-latitude and northern Atlantic
 2388 is mostly available between 1000 and 500m depth but especially above 500m in Poll-
 2389 mann (2020) and are on the order of magnitude $\mathcal{O}(10^{-3})m^2/s^2$, which is not in con-
 2390 tradiction, with that shown in Fig. 5.32, where lee wave energy is (in most regions)
 2391 at least an order of magnitude lower. These are however energy levels found in ex-
 2392 periment I075, which are considerably lower than those found in experiments P17I
 2393 and P17A. Furthermore, Fig. 5.32 only shows lee wave energy, but a more accurate

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

2394 and fair comparison would also include the background internal wave energy, since
2395 the estimates made in Pollmann (2020) does not separate lee wave energy from in-
2396 ternal wave energy. Hence, the vertically averaged total internal wave energy (i.e.
2397 lee wave plus background internal wave energy) in the same depth bins is shown in
2398 Fig. 5.33 for experiment *P17I*. The *upper left panel* shows the vertically averaged
2399 energy between 2000 and 300m depth. Here it is noticeable that the mid-latitude
2400 and northern central Atlantic stand out, why it is obvious that the large amount of
2401 lee wave energy in these regions provide a significant share of the total wave en-
2402 ergy. In the *upper right panel* showing the wave energy between 2000 and 1000m
2403 depth, these regions are even more prominent, which corresponds well with the im-
2404 age provided by Fig. 5.32. Above 1000m depth these two regions are not nearly as
2405 prominent. Here the addition of lee wave energy is mostly seen in the Denmark
2406 Strait. Although not clearly corresponding with the results of Pollmann (2020) the
2407 current model results does not strictly contradict them either. The vertically aver-
2408 aged energy levels larger than $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ between 1000 and 2000m depths shown in
2409 Fig. 5.33 are not reflected in the ARGO data, but as mentioned before the ARGO data
2410 does not fully cover the regions in which these energy level are found in the current
2411 model simulation.

2412 Although not shown here, a similar plot was made using lee wave and internal
2413 wave energy from experiment *I075*, where the energy levels in most of the model
2414 domain was found to be between a half and an entire order of magnitude lower. The
2415 energy levels were not significantly different in the mid-latitude central and north-
2416 ern Atlantic, however, making the regions in which lee wave energy is high even
2417 more prominent. This reinforces the image of the lee wave energy as a function of
2418 depth shown Fig. 5.13 showing that the lee wave energy is particularly increased be-
2419 low 3000m depth in experiment *P17I* and *P17A* as compared to experiment *I075*
2420 and not as much above 2000m depth (although this is an integral over the entire
2421 model domain not focusing on particular regions). Since (a large portion of) the
2422 lee wave energy is transferred to the background internal wave compartment be-
2423 low 3000m depth, the prominence of lee wave energy will wane at shallower depths,
2424 where the prominence of internal wave energy will increase. When comparing with
2425 ARGO derived internal wave energy, of which coverage is significantly worsened be-
2426 low 1000m depth, this means that even though energy levels might seem somewhat
2427 high in experiment *P17I* (and *P17A*), they are closer to the ARGO derived data than
2428 that of experiment *I075*.

2429 **5.6 Overview of and conclusions on the parameter sen-** 2430 **sitivity analysis**

2431 Averaged over a simulation of one year the implementation of a lee wave module
2432 in the internal wave model IDEMIX coupled to an eddy resolving regional model of
2433 the North Atlantic has shown a horizontally integrated bottom energy flux over the
2434 model domain between $F_{glob,I075} = 0.0641 TW$ and $F_{glob,A075} = 0.0612 TW$, a mag-
2435 nitude of the bottom stress between $\tau_{glob,I05} = 0.596 \cdot 10^{12} m^4/s^2$ and $\tau_{glob,A075} =$

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

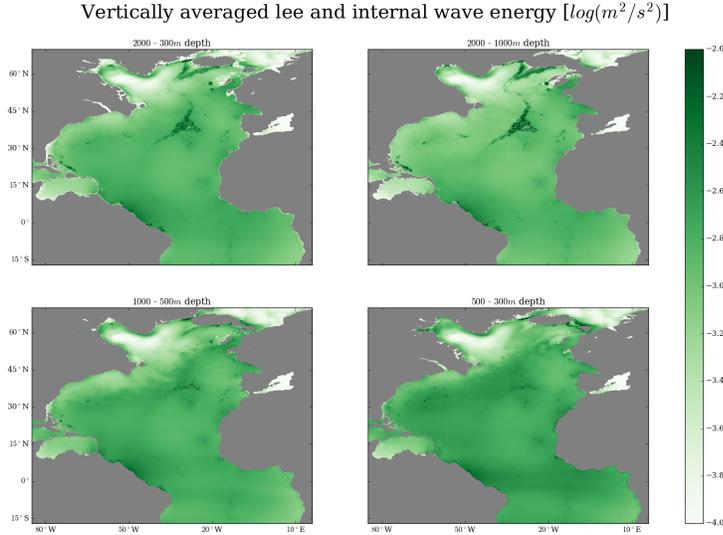


Figure 5.33: The vertically averaged internal and lee wave energy in four depth bins shows the prominence of lee wave generation in the central midlatitude and northern Atlantic in both the full depth range 2000–300m (*upper left panel*) but especially in between 2000 and 1000m depth (*upper right panel*). Above 1000m the prominence of these two regions subsides. In the *lower left panel* showing average energy levels at 1000 – 500m the prominence of the Denmark Strait is more visible, and above 500m depth (*lower right panel*) this region is fully visible, but not as prominent. Values of between $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$ and $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ at depths at 1000–300m reflects well those of the ARGO derived data. Below 1000m depth the coverage of the ARGO data is substantially lowered making a comparison more difficult.

2436 $0.859 \cdot 10^{12} m^4/s^2$, and a vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux between
 2437 $T_{glob,A075} = 5.15 \cdot 10^{13} m^5/s^2$ and $T_{glob,I05} = 5.55 \cdot 10^{13} m^5/s^2$ in the four topog-
 2438 raphy sensitivity experiments using the IDEMIX parameter values from Olbers and
 2439 Eden (2013). These four different experiments were carried out differing by the
 2440 isotropic vs. anisotropic topography spectrum and the critical inverse Froude Num-
 2441 ber $Fr_c = 0.75$ or $Fr_c = 0.5$. The so-called base experiment - using the isotropic spec-
 2442 trum and the critical inverse Froude Number $Fr = 0.75$, showed neither the lowest
 2443 nor the highest bottom energy flux or stress, and while the total energy flux changed
 2444 by a maximum of -2.57% of that of the base experiment between the four topog-
 2445 raphy sensitivity experiments, the bottom stress changed by a maximum 41.4%. By
 2446 far the largest differences in bottom stress comes about from using the anisotropic
 2447 topography spectrum rather than the isotropic; the effect of changing the critical
 2448 inverse Froude Number remains small. The differences in the bottom stress are

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

2449 seen in both the zonal and the meridional component; whereas the zonal compo-
2450 nent is decreased when using the anisotropic spectrum, the meridional is largely
2451 increased. While the bottom stress differs substantially in these four topography
2452 sensitivity experiments, by and large due to the anisotropic topography spectrum,
2453 the vertically integrated pseudo-momentum remains quite similar throughout them
2454 only differing a maximum of -4.45% Details of this is summarized in table 5.1. De-
2455 spite changes in both the zonal and meridional component of the bottom stress, a
2456 clear systematic change of the angle of the bottom stress with either the topography
2457 spectrum or the critical inverse Froude Number has not been detected. This rather
2458 depends on the specific geographical location.

2459 The spatial distribution shows a large energy flux and stress along the North
2460 Atlantic Current, in the northern Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. The pseudo-
2461 momentum flux is generally deposited 500 – 1000m upwards from the bottom, and
2462 is zonally averaged largest just below 4000m, although there is a substantial amount
2463 between 500 and 1500m depth close to and north of 60°N . This spatial distribution
2464 of both energy and pseudo-momentum flux remains similar in all four topography
2465 sensitivity experiments.

2466 Since the differences in bottom energy flux and stress were by far largest when
2467 altering the topography spectrum rather than the critical inverse Froude Number,
2468 two additional experiments dubbed *P17I* and *P17A* using the IDEMIX parameters
2469 found by Pollmann et al. (2017) were only carried out using a critical inverse Froude
2470 Number of $Fr_c = 0.75$. Changing the IDEMIX parameters reduces the lee wave en-
2471 ergy flux, but only a small amount. Experiment *P17I* and *P17A* showed a total bot-
2472 tom energy flux of 0.0616 and $0.0608TW$, respectively, and therefore the largest dif-
2473 ference between all the experiments is $0.0033TW$, which amounts to 5.14% of the
2474 largest bottom energy flux. The tendency in these two additional experiments were
2475 similar as the four topography sensitivity experiments; the difference in bottom en-
2476 ergy flux did not change much, but the magnitude of the bottom stress increased by
2477 38.6% when using the anisotropic topography spectrum (i.e. in experiment *P17A*).
2478 The vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux were increased by respectively
2479 27.9 and 19.3% relative to the base experiment, and is as such much more sensitive
2480 to changes in the IDEMIX parameters than to the topography parameters. Also the
2481 vertically integrated lee wave and background internal wave energy is much sensi-
2482 tive to changes in IDEMIX parameters, than it is to altering the topography spectrum
2483 or the critical inverse Froude Number. The pseudo-momentum flux increases, be-
2484 cause it is directly dependent on the lee wave energy (or rather on the difference in
2485 upward and downwards propagating lee wave energy), and not on the energy flux at
2486 the bottom. Even though the bottom energy flux remain similar the lee wave energy
2487 itself is increased in experiments *P17I* and *P17A*.

2488 Energy transfer to the background internal wave field has proven to be the main
2489 route, through which the lee wave field loses its energy, as it is often an order of
2490 magnitude larger than the energy transfer to the mean flow. IDEMIX calculates dif-
2491 fusivity based on the internal wave energy, and the lee wave module is implemented
2492 as an energy compartment itself linked with the background internal wave energy
2493 via a energy transfer given by $\alpha E_{iw} E_{lee}$, where the transfer coefficient, α , is depen-
2494 dent on the IDEMIX parameters μ_0 , s_* , and τ_v . The change in diffusivity due to the

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

Bottom lee wave energy flux and stress										
Quantities \ Experiments	I075	A075	I05	A05	P17I	P17A	1/3°	2°	1/10°	
$F_{glob} [TW]$	0.0628	0.0612	0.0641	0.0621	0.0616	0.0608	0.0117	0.0114	0.262	
Change in relation to base flux	-	-2.57%	2.10%	-1.15%	-1.90%	-3.15%	-	-	-	
$\tau_{x, glob} [10^{10} m^4 / s^2]$	-1.57	-0.54	-1.58	-1.25	-1.55	-1.08	-	-	-	
Change in relation to base x-stress	-	-65.7%	0.481%	-20.4%	-1.22%	-31.2%	-	-	-	
$\tau_{y, glob} [10^{10} m^4 / s^2]$	-9.10	-12.6	-9.41	-12.0	-8.82	-12.5	-	-	-	
Change in relation to base y-stress	-	38.6%	3.50%	31.8%	-3.07%	37.5%	-	-	-	
$\tau_{glob} [10^{12} m^4 / s^2]$	0.608	0.859	0.596	0.838	0.610	0.842	-	-	-	
Change in relation to base stress	-	41.4%	-1.97%	37.9%	0.355%	38.6%	-	-	-	
$T_{glob} 10^{13} [m^5 / s^2]$	5.39	5.15	5.55	5.26	6.98	6.43	-	-	-	
Change in relation to base pseudo-momentum flux	-	-4.35%	2.96%	-2.36%	27.9%	19.3%	-	-	-	

Table 5.1: Summary of difference in bottom lee wave energy flux and stress and pseudo-momentum flux between the different topography sensitivity and IDEMIX parameter sensitivity experiments. Whereas the bottom energy flux is roughly $0.06TW$ in all estimates and differs only a maximum of 3.15% between the experiments, the bottom stress differs up to 40% between the difference runs. Using the anisotropic topography spectrum instead of the isotropic leaves large differences in the two components of the bottom stress throughout all the different experiments. Even though the bottom stress is increased with the anisotropic stress the pseudo-momentum throughout the water column remains fairly similar. The exception to this stems from using the new IDEMIX parameters found by Pollmann et al. (2017) with which the pseudo-momentum flux is increased by 27.9 and 19.3% respectively. The last three columns show the bottom energy flux integrated over the model domains of the 1/3° regional model of the North Atlantic and the 2° and 1/10° global models, respectively. From these, the increase of lee wave energy flux with model resolution is obvious.

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

2495 addition of lee waves is thus also dependent on the background internal wave en-
2496 ergy and the IDEMIX parameters. There is a very clear link between an increase in
2497 background internal wave energy (as compared with a the control run without lee
2498 waves) and energy transfer from lee waves to internal waves. Although the energy
2499 transfer takes predominantly takes place near the bottom, the background internal
2500 wave energy can be increased by up to as much as 5 times through the entire water
2501 column over the energy transfer.

2502 Across the four topography sensitivity experiments the difference in the influ-
2503 ence of lee waves on diffusivity remains very small, but changing the IDEMIX pa-
2504 rameters, μ_0 , s_* , and τ_v , in experiments *P17I* and *P17A* alters the influence of lee
2505 waves on diffusivity. Although the lee wave energy itself is increased in experiments
2506 *P17I* and *P17A*, the energy transfer to the background internal wave field is de-
2507 creased (because α is decreased) and so is the difference in diffusivity. Actually, the
2508 more energetic lee wave field should be seen as a response to a lower energy transfer
2509 to the background internal wave compartment, rather than the other way around.
2510 Because of this lower energy transfer the diffusivity is clearly larger in experiment
2511 *I075* than in *P17I* and *P17A* all of which shows diffusivities clearly larger than in the
2512 control run. It is most noticeable, however, that the diffusivity is mostly increased in
2513 the interior rather than near the bottom (relatively speaking). In a zonally averaged
2514 sense, on the contrary, it is shown that the diffusivity near the bottom is actually of-
2515 ten decreased. This could be because of the weaker mean flow, on which the effect
2516 of the lee waves is more apparent.

2517 The bottom velocity is in many regions reduced (compared with the control run)
2518 by as much as 0.1 m/s , and the correlation between a large bottom stress and a large
2519 decrease in bottom speed is very clear. This is the case all along the North Atlantic
2520 Current, but especially in the Western and Northern Atlantic. Furthermore, compar-
2521 ing the East and West Greenland Currents (where lee waves generation is allowed in
2522 the region of the former but not the latter) shows very clearly that the lee waves re-
2523 move significant momentum from deep currents. If this hypothesis is accepted, the
2524 current model implementation should see lee waves as removing energy from the
2525 mean flow near the bottom, transferring it to the internal wave field in which it prop-
2526 agates and is ultimately transferred to the turbulent domain, where it is available for
2527 mixing. In this way, the addition of lee waves just as much increase the diffusivity in
2528 the interior (at least below 2500m depth) as it will near the bottom.

2529 The integration length of one year was chosen in order to eliminate seasonal
2530 changes, but it has allowed a varying eddy signal to have an impact on average
2531 quantities above 1000m depth. However, since the lee wave generation is already
2532 inhibited in near coastal regions, where the ocean is shallower, the difference in the
2533 impact of eddies over the different experiments in the uppermost 1000 meters is
2534 mitigated in many regions. A longer integration is therefore recommended if the
2535 aim is to study the impact of lee waves in shallower seas, but it is not necessarily
2536 paramount in global models. As to whether which setting should be used for further
2537 investigation, it is clear that despite a larger bottom stress, the difference between
2538 the isotropic and anisotropic topography spectrum remains small in the North At-
2539 lantic. It is clear that changing the original IDEMIX parameters, μ_0 , j_* and τ_v has
2540 a much larger influence on both the lee wave field itself and its influence on other

5.6. OVERVIEW OF AND CONCLUSIONS ON THE PARAMETER SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

2541 variables, than changing the topography spectrum and especially than the critical
2542 inverse Froude Number.

2543 Vertically averaging lee and internal wave energy in four depths bins does not
2544 directly contradict the ARGO-derived data from Pollmann (2020); neither using the
2545 lee and internal wave energy from experiments *I075* and *PI17*. However, it does
2546 also not validate either one setting or the other. The difficulty in comparing the
2547 energy levels simulated by the model with those found by Pollmann et al. (2017) lie
2548 in the discrepancy between the depth of the ARGO data and the depth at which the
2549 lee wave energy is most heavily concentrated; whereas the ARGO data has its best
2550 coverage above 1000m depth in the northern Atlantic basin, the lee wave energy is
2551 in most regions primarily situated below 2000m depth. As such, in vertical averages
2552 above 1000m depth, the lee wave energy only directly constitutes a minor fraction of
2553 the total internal wave energy (i.e. lee wave plus background internal wave).

2554 Chapter 6

2555 Regional focus on the Southern 2556 Ocean

2557 The Southern Ocean has previously been highlighted as a region of intense lee wave
2558 generation due to the deep reaching eddies in the region (Nikurashin and Ferrari,
2559 2010a; Trossman et al., 2013). Additionally, several observational studies focusing
2560 on lee wave driven mixing have been carried out in this region. Cusack et al. (2017)
2561 made direct observations of the upward energy flux in a lee wave in Drake Passage,
2562 which aligned with that predicted from linear theory if the topographic blocking
2563 effect (the Froude Number limiter function applied in eq. 2.34) was taken into ac-
2564 count. Although there seems to be agreement over the large lee wave generation
2565 here, multiple studies found discrepancies between the observed dissipation rates
2566 and the energy flux predicted from linear theory (Waterman et al., 2013; Sheen et al.,
2567 2013; Brearley et al., 2013). The interaction of the lee wave field with the mean flow
2568 has been suggested as a cause for this discrepancy. In the global $1/10^\circ$ model the
2569 region does also show a large lee wave generation and a closer investigation of this
2570 region is therefore warranted. In this study this done in the global $1/10^\circ$ model and
2571 the results are shown in the following section. All values are temporal averages taken
2572 over the last year of a four year simulation.

2573 The lee wave energy flux on the entire model domain is shown in Fig. 6.1. The
2574 flux in the Southern Ocean is (along with that in the North Atlantic) the largest across
2575 the entire model domain with values reaching $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in many areas. The yel-
2576 low line circumpassing the Southern Ocean is the path along which transects of
2577 the Southern Ocean (which will be shown later) are taken across. The magnitudes
2578 reached in the North Atlantic are similar to those calculated from the regional $1/12^\circ$
2579 model shown in the previous chapter.

2580 To get an image of the effect of lee waves with depth, a transect of the Southern
2581 Ocean along the yellow line visible in Fig. 6.1 is shown in Fig. 6.2. The *upper left*
2582 *panel* shows the lee wave energy (notice the logarithmic scale), which is prominent
2583 in most of the transect and reaches maximum values of $10^{-1} m^2/s^2$. The lee wave
2584 energy is as a rule of thumb reduced by a factor of 10 within the deepest kilometer

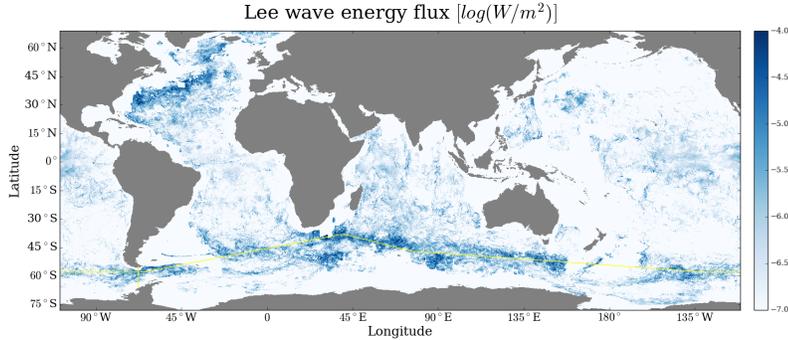


Figure 6.1: The bottom lee wave energy flux is largest in the Southern Ocean and in the North Atlantic, where it reaches values of $10^{-4} W/m^2$, and barely present in much of the Pacific. The yellow lines indicates sections across which transects were made.

2585 in the water column. Along with the lee wave energy itself is shown the transfer
 2586 to the internal wave domain (*upper right panel*), from which additional energy will
 2587 be available for mixing, and the transfer to (*lower left panel*) and from (*lower right*
 2588 *panel*) the mean flow. The vertical distribution of the transfer to the internal waves
 2589 follows very closely that of the energy except for at roughly 2500m depth from about
 2590 60° to 80° E, where the energy transfer seems reduced. In general the energy transfer
 2591 is a factor of $10^{-6} s^{-1}$ times the lee wave energy.

2592 The energy transfer to and from the mean flow (*lower left* and *lower right panel*)
 2593 is generally lower than the transfer to the internal wave domain (*upper right panel*),
 2594 although both can locally be as large. This depends very much on the region in ques-
 2595 tion, though. But first and foremost it is more localized, and its vertical distribution
 2596 much more irregular making the correlation with the lee wave energy lower. The
 2597 transfer from the lee wave domain to the internal wave domain bears more or less
 2598 the same vertical pattern as the lee wave energy itself, and this is not the case for the
 2599 interaction with the mean flow. In general the transfer the mean flow occurs near the
 2600 bottom, while the transfer from the mean flow will take place in the interior. This in-
 2601 dicates that while lee waves can loose significant amounts of energy to the mean
 2602 flow near the bottom, vertically propagating lee waves can in the interior ocean gain
 2603 significant energy exchanges with the mean flow potentially affecting both the mean
 2604 flow and the internal wave field in the interior. Areas where lee wave energy is per-
 2605 sists more than 1500m above the bottom also show large energy transfer from the
 2606 mean flow, indicating the importance of the energy exchange with the mean flow in
 2607 the vertical profile of lee wave field.

2608 The image shown here is not dissimilar to that shown at 37° N in the Atlantic in
 2609 section 5.1.4. The lee wave energy field is in many areas in an approximate balance
 2610 between the energy flux at the bottom and the transfer to the background internal

2611 wave field, but the mean flow interaction can locally upset this balance and provide
 2612 or extract energy form or to the mean flow. But it is clearer here, how the exchange
 2613 with the mean flow is able to alter vertical profile of the lee wave field.

Southern Ocean transect

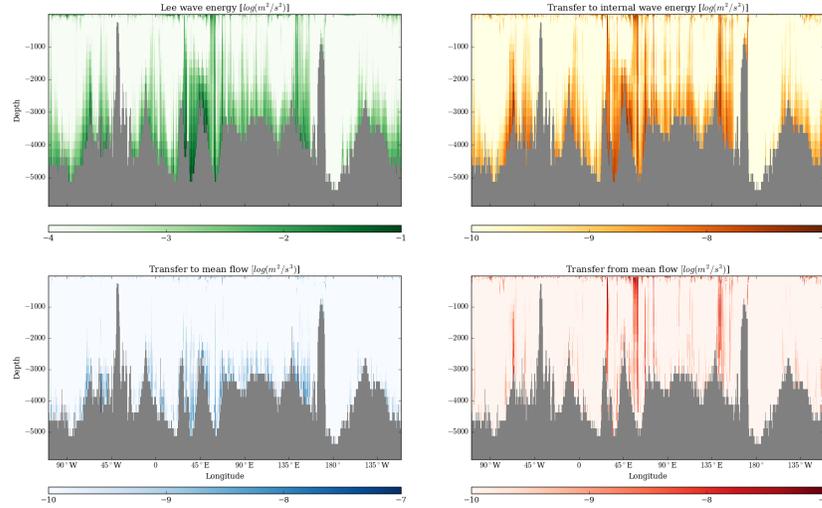


Figure 6.2: The lee wave energy (*upper left panel*) is present along the entire transect line and often acts on the lowest kilometer in the water column. It is mostly present in the regions of rough topography. The transfer to the internal wave domain (*upper right panel*) shows a very similar vertical distribution and is generally a factor of 10^{-6} times the energy itself. The energy transfer to (*lower left panel*) and from (*lower right panel*) the mean flow is lower and its vertical distribution more irregular, and the correlation with the lee wave energy obviously lower.

2614 Both the transfer to the background internal wave compartment and the mean
 2615 flow transfer were integrated vertically and horizontally over the entire model do-
 2616 main (i.e. globally) and amounts to $T_{IW} = \int_x \int_y \int_z \alpha_{ww} E_{iw} E_{lee} \partial x \partial y \partial z = 2.2 GW/s$
 2617 and $T_U = \int_x \int_y \int_z \tau_{lee}^{-1} E_{lee} \partial x \partial y \partial z = 0.086 GW/s$. In the latter the direction of the
 2618 transfer has been taken into account, which means that over the entire model do-
 2619 main the energy transfer of the mean flow interaction is from the mean flow to the
 2620 lee waves. Integrated globally, however, the energy transfer from the mean flow is
 2621 roughly 1/25 of the transfer from lee waves to the background internal wave domain.

2622 Along with the lee wave energy and the energy transfers to and from the lee wave
 2623 domain, the internal wave energy (*upper left panel*), buoyancy frequency (*upper*
 2624 *right panel*), diffusivity (*lower left panel*), and the dissipation rate of turbulent ki-
 2625 netic energy (TKE) (*lower right panel*) is presented in Fig. 6.3. The internal wave

2626 energy reaches maximum values of around $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$, but the vertical distribution
2627 is much more uniform than that of the lee wave energy. Increased values of internal
2628 wave energy can be seen at the regions of rough topography near $70^\circ W$, $50^\circ E$,
2629 and $170^\circ E$ which coincides very well with regions of large energy transfer between
2630 the two compartments. The diffusivity shown is clearly elevated in several near bot-
2631 tom regions. It reaches values of or close to $0.1 m^2/s$ near the bottom in particular at
2632 $70^\circ W$, $170^\circ E$, and $125^\circ W$. At the first and last of these three longitudes an elevated
2633 diffusivity is persistent throughout much of the water column, which is mirrored by
2634 the large amount of internal wave energy, while the second is characterized by the
2635 diffusivity being very large solely near the bottom. The cause of the large diffusivity
2636 here seems to be a very low buoyancy frequency rather than large amount of internal
2637 wave energy. This shows perfectly well how the diffusivity depends on the ratio
2638 of internal wave energy to the stability frequency. Furthermore, both the first and
2639 the third of these regions coincide with regions of a large lee wave energy transfer.
2640 Thus, the lee wave field and its subsequent energy transfer to the internal wave field
2641 - as present at roughly $50^\circ E$ and $170^\circ E$ - is very well able to have a significant impact
2642 on the diffusivity. The dissipation of TKE reaches values between $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ and
2643 $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ at several longitudes in the transect, which coincide with large amounts
2644 of internal wave energy and high diffusivities.

2645 The Drake Passage has long been acknowledged for both its particular role in
2646 Southern Ocean dynamics (Pedlosky, 2013) and as a region of intense lee wave gen-
2647 eration (Nikurashin et al., 2013). Furthermore, it was also the region in which the
2648 first unambiguous observation of a lee wave was made (Cusack et al., 2017). Thus,
2649 it is only appropriate to apply special attention to this region. In a cross section of
2650 the Southern Ocean at $68^\circ W$ over the Drake Passage (this section is marked with a
2651 yellow line in Fig. 6.1) lee wave generation and dissipation has been examined.

2652 As with the transect of the Southern Ocean, the lee wave energy (*upper left*
2653 *panel*), the transfer from lee waves to internal waves (*upper right panel*) and the
2654 transfer to (*lower left panel*) and from the mean flow (*lower right panel*) is presented
2655 in the cross section of the Drake Passage in Fig. 6.4. Lee wave energy is present in al-
2656 most the entire cross section reaching maximum values of $10^{-1} m^2/s^2$ in the central
2657 and northern part of it. The large lee wave energy also results in a large transfer to
2658 the internal wave domain of $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ in the central part of the cross section. No-
2659 ticeable in this exact area, though, is also the large energy transfer from the lee wave
2660 field to the mean flow. This transfer is only present in the bottommost kilometer (or
2661 so), but its magnitude is in at several latitudes in the entire cross section equal or at
2662 least close to that of the internal wave transfer.

2663 The energy transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field reaches maxima
2664 around $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ close to $60^\circ S$. Here the transfer persists in most of the water col-
2665 umn. This also result in the lee wave energy, and subsequently the transfer to the
2666 internal wave field being elevated throughout the water column. Close $57^\circ S$ the
2667 transfer from the mean flow is close to the same magnitude near the bottom with
2668 similar effect on the lee wave field and transfer to the background internal wave
2669 field.

2670 Although the transfer to/from the mean flow over the entire cross section is lower
2671 and still more localized than the transfer to the internal wave domain, it is also clear

Southern Ocean transect

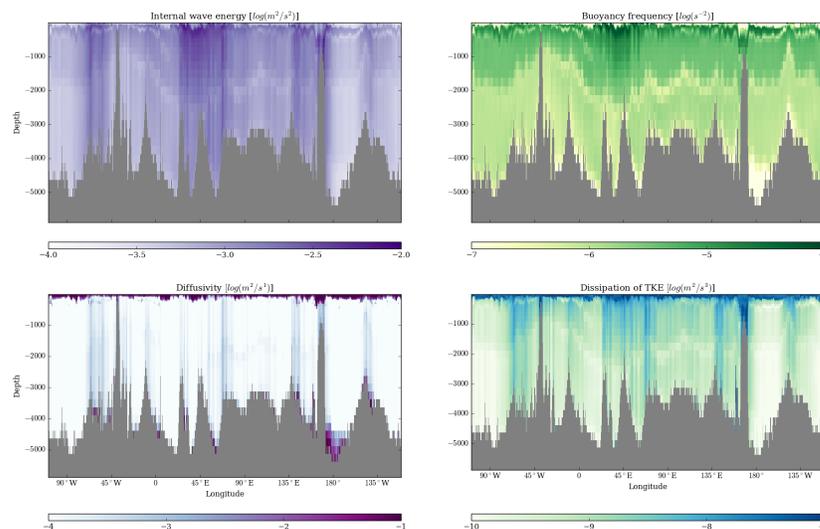


Figure 6.3: The *upper left panel* shows the background internal wave energy at the transect along the Southern Ocean. The energy is in general more evenly distributed in the vertical than the lee wave energy, but is also lower than the lee wave energy is near the bottom. Regions of very large background internal wave energy correspond very well with regions of very high energy transfer from the lee wave field. The *upper right panel* shows the (square of the) buoyancy frequency, which exhibits a clear pycnocline and a minimum of $10^{-7} s^{-2}$ near 180° . The *lower left panel* shows the diffusivity, which is clearly increased in regions of very high internal wave energy and regions of very low buoyancy frequency. The *lower right panel* show the dissipation rate of TKE, which is elevated to local maxima between $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ and $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ in regions of high internal wave energy and high diffusivity.

2672 here, that the energy exchange between lee waves and mean flow can locally be of
 2673 the same magnitude as the transfer to the background internal wave field. The inter-
 2674 action with the mean flow also show here to have a significant effect on the vertical
 2675 profile of lee wave energy in specific locations.

2676 In figure 6.5 the internal wave energy, stratification, diffusivity, and dissipation
 2677 rate of TKE is shown in the same cross section of the Drake Passage. The southern
 2678 part of the cross section shows both less internal wave energy (*upper left panel*) and
 2679 lower buoyancy frequency (*upper right panel*) compared to the northern part of the
 2680 section. The internal wave energy increases towards the north at all depths, and
 2681 this image is mirrored in the the buoyancy frequency. There are, however, traces of
 2682 increased internal wave energy in the lowest 1500m or so from roughly $61^\circ S$ north-

Southern Ocean cross section

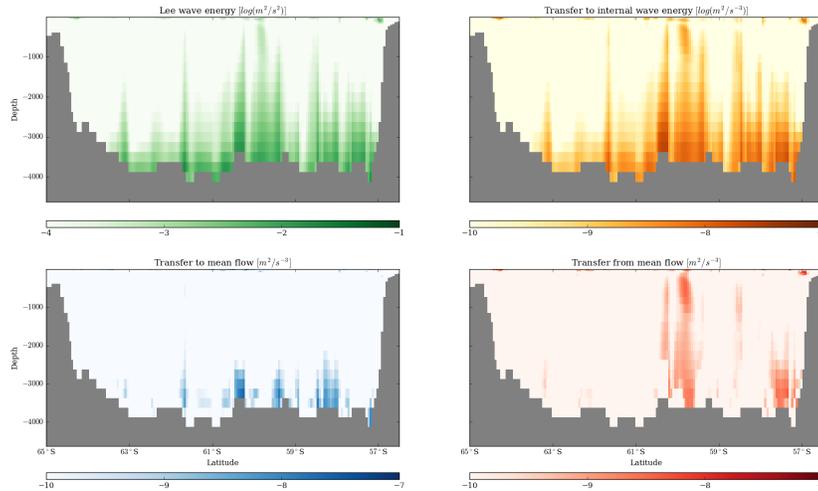


Figure 6.4: Over basically the entire cross section of Drake Passage at $68^\circ W$ lee wave energy (*upper left panel*) is present in the bottommost $1000m$. The vertical profile of the transfer to the background internal wave energy (*upper right panel*) is very similar to that of the lee wave energy. The transfer to the mean flow (*lower left panel*) can locally be as large as that to the internal wave field, but it mainly occurs in the bottommost kilometer. The transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field (*lower right panel*) can also have the same magnitude, occurs both near the bottom and in the interior. As such, large energy transfer from the mean flow significantly impacts the vertical profile of the lee wave field and subsequently the transfer to the internal wave field.

2683 wards. This clearly correlates with the large energy transfer from the lee wave field,
 2684 and shows the ability of the lee wave field to impact the internal wave field. The dif-
 2685 fusivity (*lower left panel*) is close to the canonical Munk value of $10^{-4} m^2/s$ in much
 2686 of the southern half of the section. In several near bottom locations in the northern
 2687 half of the section the diffusivity reaches $10^{-1} m^2/s$. In the interior of the northern
 2688 half (especially below $2000m$ depth) the diffusivity remains around $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$, but
 2689 the traces of increased internal wave energy is clearly visible. As such, the impact of
 2690 the lee wave field on the diffusivity is clearly seen. Close to $60^\circ S$, for instance, the
 2691 internal wave energy is elevated through out the water column as is the diffusivity.
 2692 This coincide very well with a large lee wave energy transfer throughout the water
 2693 column. Similarly the TKE dissipation rate is increased towards the north reaching
 2694 magnitudes above $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ in the interior. As in Fig. 6.3 the TKE dissipation rate
 2695 is increased in regions of high internal wave energy and diffusivity.

Southern Ocean cross section

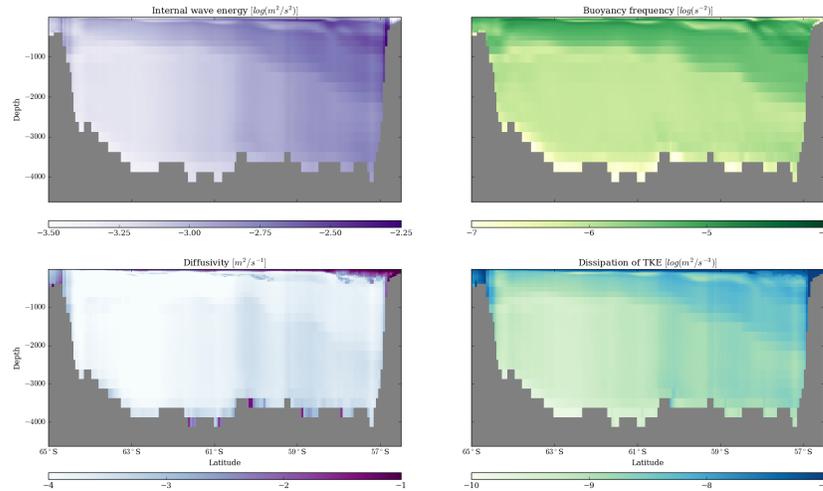


Figure 6.5: The background internal wave energy (*upper left panel*) increases at all depths towards the north in the northern part of the cross section. This is mirrored by the buoyancy frequency (*upper right panel*). The diffusivity (*lower left panel*) is near the Munk value of $10^{-4} m^2/s$ in most of the southern half of the section. In the northern half it is increased in much of the interior and exhibit near bottom maxima close to $10^{-1} m^2/s$. Regions of increased internal wave energy and increased diffusivity also show a high dissipation rate of TKE (*lower right panel*), which reaches magnitudes of 10^{-8} in the interior. These regions coincide very well with regions of large energy transfer from lee waves, highlighting the ability of the lee wave field to affect the diffusivity and dissipation of TKE.

2696 In general the energy of the lee wave field simulated in the Southern Ocean $1/10^\circ$
 2697 POP model resembles those in the $1/12^\circ$ regional North Atlantic FLAME model. En-
 2698 ergy transfer from the lee wave to the background internal wave field remain the
 2699 dominant route of lee wave dissipation. It is, however, also clear the the interac-
 2700 tion with the mean flow plays a larger role here, than was the case in the North At-
 2701 lantic. This energy exchange is still more localized than the energy transfer to the
 2702 background internal wave field, but it is significant throughout a much larger area.
 2703 In general, the mean flow extract more energy from the lee waves towards the bot-
 2704 tom, and provide more energy for lee waves in the interior. This reinforce claims in
 2705 previous studies, that lee wave-mean flow interaction could play a role in the dis-
 2706 crepancy between observed TKE dissipation rates and that calculated from lee wave
 2707 theory (Waterman et al., 2013; Sheen et al., 2013). Dissipation rates of TKE modelled
 2708 by IDEMIX exhibit magnitudes of $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ at several locations in the Southern

2709 Ocean. Regions of high TKE dissipation rates coincide with those exhibiting large
2710 amounts of internal wave energy and high diffusivity. These magnitudes are compa-
2711 rable to observations in both the Drake Passage and Kerguelen Plateau (St. Laurent
2712 et al., 2012; Sheen et al., 2013; Cusack et al., 2017; Waterman et al., 2013), where lee
2713 waves has been highlighted as primary a source of internal mixing.

2714 Chapter 7

2715 Discussion and outlook

2716 While some aspects of the investigation of the different settings in the lee waves im-
2717 plementation are clear - the bottom energy flux does not change much regardless of
2718 the lee wave parameters, but a change in the IDEMIX parameters significantly alters
2719 the lee wave field - other aspects are less clear. A few of the research questions thus
2720 have a clear answer, while others reveal a complexity in the model implementation
2721 and a discussion of possible reasons for this ambiguity is warranted. There are also
2722 several sources of uncertainty in both the lee wave energy flux, in IDEMIX, and in
2723 topography data, which needs to be addressed. Furthermore, the results presented
2724 in the previous chapters ought to be put in a broader scientific context. That is the
2725 purpose of this chapter.

2726 The assumptions made in the derivation of the lee wave energy flux have their
2727 foundation primarily in the work by Bell (1975) and Olbers (1976), while a few were
2728 of a practical nature. While the scheme from Bell (1975) has laid the foundation for
2729 most studies on lee waves (Nikurashin and Ferrari, 2010b; Scott et al., 2011; Wright
2730 et al., 2014) a scheme originally used to parameterize mountain drag in the atmo-
2731 sphere - the scheme of Garner (2005) - has also proved useful in calculating lee wave
2732 energy fluxes (Trossman et al., 2013). In the formulation of the energy equation it
2733 is assumed that the energy density spectrum of lee waves stay close to that at the
2734 bottom. This is not necessarily the case in the real ocean. Although the GM-model
2735 (Garrett and Munk, 1975) suffers from regional biases and discrepancies (Polzin and
2736 Lvov, 2011), it is nonetheless widely accepted as a standard lense, through which
2737 internal wave energy spectra is calculated. The GM-model does not capture the
2738 density spectra of the Bell flux, and to the author's knowledge no attempt exists to
2739 measure energy density spectra in accordance with the Bell flux. The ratio of back-
2740 ground internal to lee wave energy simulated in this study, indicate that the lee wave
2741 energy constitute a major fraction of the total internal wave energy (background
2742 plus lee wave) in many regions - the central northern Atlantic and Southern Ocean,
2743 for instance - in the interior ocean (taking the entire water column into account).
2744 Since the interior ocean is where the GM-model fares best (Polzin and Lvov, 2011),
2745 an overestimation of the total lee wave energy is a possibility. The need for detailed

7.1. EDDIES AND RESOLUTION

2746 observations of lee waves (their energy flux, their propagation and their dissipation)
2747 to constrain the dissipation of lee wave energy and thus to calibrate an internal wave
2748 model to arrive at a realistic energy field, is obvious, but their dependence on a time-
2749 varying eddy-field and their generation in the deep ocean make such observations
2750 challenging (Legg, 2021). Quantifying a potential discrepancy between observed in-
2751 ternal wave energy and that simulated in the model was attempted in section 5.5,
2752 but is, as mentioned, also difficult because of the discrepancy between the depth at
2753 which measurements of internal wave energy exists, and the depth at which the lee
2754 wave energy is located in the model simulation. The observational data compared
2755 with here was based on fine-scale parameterizations of internal wave dissipation,
2756 but this method has previously been hypothesized to not capture the physics be-
2757 hind lee wave dissipation (Waterman et al., 2014).

2758 The formulation of the energy equation for lee waves introduces the parame-
2759 ter, r , in the denominator of the shape function $A(k, \phi)$ to avoid singularity when
2760 lee waves are generated at a frequency $\omega = f$. This does, however, also introduce a
2761 dependence of the mean flow interaction on this parameter, r , which is of course
2762 not ideal, but it is necessary when integrating in order to formulate the very neat
2763 expression for the isotropic flux. Quantifying this dependence thoroughly has not
2764 been attempted, but it is noted that the dependence is weak especially in the high
2765 energy wavenumber domain.

2766 7.1 Eddies and resolution

2767 The integration length of a single year was chosen to eliminate possible seasonal
2768 influences. It is not viable to claim, for instance, that the addition of lee waves in
2769 an internal wave model increase the diffusivity by such and such an amount in the
2770 North Atlantic, if one only looks at winter months, where mixing is generally larger.
2771 But it seems that the integration length still permits a varying eddy field to have
2772 an effect on the average of some quantities in some regions in the topography and
2773 IDEMIX parameter sensitivity experiments. This shows itself in large differences in
2774 stratification seen as tongues of varying sign stretching down to about 2000m depth,
2775 although not shown in Fig. 5.17. The varying eddy field is more apparent at shal-
2776 lower depths as seen in Fig. 5.20, where it is also clear that the effect of lee waves on
2777 the mean flow increases with greater depths. In essence this means that variances in
2778 both stratification, diffusivity and other quantities above a certain threshold is more
2779 likely to be the result of a varying eddy field rather than changes in the internal wave
2780 field. The depth of this threshold also depends on the region in question. It is of
2781 course desirable to isolate the effect of lee waves on the rest of the variables, but it
2782 seems like the integration length still permits the varying eddy field to have some
2783 impact on average quantities above a certain depth. The effect of eddies on the gen-
2784 eration of lee waves are, however, also of general interest. The *right panel* in Fig. 5.2
2785 shows the bottom speed in regions where lee wave generation is permitted by the
2786 topographic spectrum data.

2787 Traces of an eddy field is apparent in the bottom speed, but it does not seem
2788 as if particular eddies in particular regions stand out in the average speed over the

7.1. EDDIES AND RESOLUTION

2789 integration period, where lee waves are generated. This would have been a cause
2790 for such a region to not be representative for a mean state or a mean lee wave gen-
2791 eration. It could (and is probably more likely to) be the case in shallower seas, but
2792 here the lee waves are already inhibited by the topography data. Put differently, the
2793 topographic data already inhibits lee wave generation close to coastal areas, where
2794 the ocean is shallower, and where a varying eddy field would be more likely to have
2795 an effect on the variance of lee wave generation (at least in the current model do-
2796 main), which should not be considered representative for a mean state. This means
2797 that while eddies are considered necessary for the generation of lee waves, it is not
2798 the case that a varying eddy field produces an irregular lee wave field. The global
2799 lee wave energy flux and stress at the bottom are plotted as a function of time in Fig.
2800 5.4. The lee wave bottom stress is remarkably steady throughout the entire simula-
2801 tion only varying a few percentages, with the lee wave flux varying up to 20 – 25%.
2802 A certain variance is to be expected, though, especially given that the bulk of the lee
2803 wave generation takes place in only a few regions in the model domain. Indeed sev-
2804 eral authors have pointed out the need for deep reaching eddies to create lee waves,
2805 although the focus have primarily been on the Southern Ocean (Yang et al., 2018;
2806 Nikurashin et al., 2013). In this study it is obvious that lee wave generation is es-
2807 pecially strong in regions where the eddy field is strong as well. This is mainly the
2808 western Atlantic, along the North Atlantic Current and in the Southern Ocean. Lee
2809 wave generation is can also be strong in areas where the eddy field is not the primary
2810 driver, for instance the Denmark Strait. It is again noted that, in general the lee wave
2811 generation is suppressed in near coastal regions by the topography data, where one
2812 finds shallow depths, and where it would thus be reasonable to assume that eddies
2813 would more often be able to reach the bottom and contribute to lee wave generation.
2814 Regarding the effect of eddies in high latitudes, it is also worth having in mind, that
2815 the Rossby radius of deformation, which determines the scales of the eddies varies
2816 from around 100 km in the tropics to a few kilometers in the high latitudes (Hallberg,
2817 2013). This means that eddies are not nearly as well resolved in high latitudes as in
2818 mid-latitudes or southward thereof, which can have an effect on the bottom flow in
2819 the high latitudes and therefore on the lee wave generation. The magnitude of the
2820 bottom stress is, in the isotropic case, given as the bottom energy flux divided by the
2821 bottom speed, $\tau = F \cdot |U_0|^{-1}$. The fact that the bottom stress varies less than the flux
2822 means that (on average) the bottom speed act as a damping factor. This could point
2823 toward the eddy field having a smaller impact on the generation of lee waves. A de-
2824 tailed examination of the correlation between the distribution of unresolved eddy
2825 kinetic energy in coarse and high resolution models and the lee wave energy flux in
2826 higher resolution models could prove fruitful in qualitatively determining the effect
2827 of the eddy field on lee wave generation. This would be the first step in a parameter-
2828 ization of the lee wave energy flux in coarse resolution models.

2829 The two experiments using coarser resolution models (the $1/3^\circ$ FLAME setup
2830 and the 2° setup) clearly shows that the lee wave energy flux is not simulated prop-
2831 erly in coarse resolution models most likely due to the absence of a resolved eddy
2832 field. A formulation of a parameterized lee wave energy flux, which is dependent
2833 of the eddy kinetic energy should therefore be examined. An attempt at such a pa-
2834 rameterization has - to the author's knowledge - not been undertaken, but could be

7.2. BOTTOM STRESS

2835 carried out within the pyOM-IDEMIX framework. Indeed, pyOM already couples
2836 the parameterized eddy kinetic energy to the internal gravity wave domain, which is
2837 modelled by IDEMIX, so an additional energy energy flux from the EKE to a lee wave
2838 domain would be completely in line with the current model formulation. The meso-
2839 scale eddy energy and its role in larger energy cycle in pyOM is presented in Eden
2840 and Olbers (2014). The governing equation for eddy kinetic energy E_{eke} in pyOM is
2841 given as

$$\rho_0 DE_{eke} = -\nabla \cdot F + \rho_0 A_h (\nabla_h \bar{\mathbf{u}})^2 + \rho_0 g^2 K_{gm} \frac{|\mathbf{e}_h|^2}{N^2} - \rho_0 \epsilon_{eke}$$

2842 where the first term on the right hand side, the flux divergence term, only signi-
2843 fies a lateral diffusion. The second term on the right hand side represents the energy
2844 flux from the mean kinetic energy due to lateral friction, with A_h being the lateral
2845 viscosity, the third term on the right hand side is the eddy mixing term, which draws
2846 energy from the dynamic enthalpy, and the last term on the right hand side is the
2847 dissipation to the internal gravity wave domain. Adding a negative term on the right
2848 hand side of this equation to account for the energy flux to lee waves should be pos-
2849 sible, even while keeping the coupling of the lee wave domain and the background
2850 internal wave domain intact. In a coarse resolution model, an additional term in
2851 a lee wave energy equation could be a mean energy flux term, but the balance be-
2852 tween fluxes from mean and eddy kinetic energy would require consideration. In the
2853 $1/10^\circ$ global model in this study the total lee wave energy flux amounts to $0.24TW$,
2854 which is in line with previous estimates, and the two terms representing mean and
2855 eddy kinetic energy fluxes should amount to a similar figure when integrated over
2856 the model domain. Both an eddy-lee wave flux term and a mean flow-lee wave flux
2857 term should be dependent on the eddy and the mean energy themselves, and also
2858 on the topography data to ensure a realistic geographical distribution. Further spec-
2859 ification of such formulation of the two terms is not the scope of his study, and re-
2860 quires further investigation of the results from the eddy resolving model.

2861 7.2 Bottom stress

2862 The question of why the bottom stress increases significantly, while the bottom flux
2863 does not, when using the anisotropic topographic spectrum instead of the isotropic
2864 one, is not straightforward, since their respective dependence on the topography
2865 spectrum are similar. As mentioned, the bottom stress is given by the bottom en-
2866 ergy flux divided by the dot product of the bottom velocity and \mathbf{n} . In the isotropic
2867 case, the flux is approximated and in the anisotropic case it is evaluated numerically
2868 over both wavenumber and propagation angle, which the bottoms stress then also
2869 is. This raises the question of what effect the numerical scheme and the numerical
2870 resolution in k - and ϕ -space has on the bottom energy flux and therefore on the
2871 bottom stress in the anisotropic case. An apparent way to test this would be to vary
2872 this resolution, but this is computationally very expensive. Indeed it is one of the

7.3. DIFFUSIVITY

2873 reasons why IDEMIX to begin with divides and analytically integrates the internal
2874 wave energy into angular compartments in the first place. Quantitative numerical
2875 experiments of the energy flux and bottom stress as a function of the resolution in
2876 k - and ϕ -space (although not presented here) does not show a significant difference
2877 to the resolution used in anisotropic experiments, however.

2878 Fig. 5.25 tells us that, besides the bottom most grid points, the lee wave en-
2879 ergy is generated in equal amounts at depth in the case of the two spectra, so above
2880 4500m depth, the energy generated at each depth index is most likely very simi-
2881 lar in all experiments. This would point to the difference in bottom stress resulting
2882 from the relation between the direction of propagation and the the direction of the
2883 mean flow, i.e. a difference in the dot product $\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{n}$. The angle of the bottom stress
2884 as examined in two different regions (the western Atlantic and the Denmark Strait)
2885 over the four topography sensitivity experiments only shows a clear systematic dif-
2886 ference between using the iso- and anisotropic topography spectrum in one of the
2887 regions, the Denmark Strait, whereas in the western Atlantic the change with the
2888 critical inverse Froude Number is much clearer and more systematic. Despite this,
2889 an angular shift in the bottom stress towards a more meridional direction with the
2890 anisotropic spectrum (which the *average* increase in the meridional component and
2891 the decrease in the zonal component of the stress indicate), could be the result of a
2892 shift in the dot product $\mathbf{U}_0 \cdot \mathbf{n}$. Such a detailed investigation has not been carried
2893 out, however. The question of why the bottom stress increases with the anisotropic
2894 spectrum is also rendered less important, by the fact that the vertically (and hori-
2895 zontally) integrated pseudo-momentum flux varies much less over the topography
2896 sensitivity experiments.

2897 7.3 Diffusivity

2898 The lack of increase in diffusivity - in a zonally averaged sense - despite a very en-
2899 ergetic lee wave field (especially towards the bottom) is interesting. This is in con-
2900 trast with the result of Nikurashin and Ferrari (2010b), where bottom mixing rates is
2901 clearly increased with the implementation of a lee wave energy flux in an idealized
2902 model study. With the current implementation the diffusivity is only directly linked
2903 with the background internal wave field. The link with the lee wave field comes
2904 about from the exchange between lee waves and the background wave field with the
2905 term $\alpha_{ww} E_{iw} E_{lee}$ in Eq. 2.46. In other words, the lee waves can only affect the diffu-
2906 sivity indirectly via the background internal wave field. The (horizontally integrated)
2907 energy transfer from the lee wave compartment to the background wave field and
2908 lee wave energies (which are plotted in Fig. 5.13), show that the energy is mostly
2909 transferred in the deep ocean. This is the case for all experiments, although the ex-
2910 periments using IDEMIX parameters from Pollmann et al. (2017) shows a slightly de-
2911 creased energy transfer below 4000m. It is evident, however, from Fig. 5.14 and Fig.
2912 5.15 that although the energy transfer mostly takes place near the bottom, the inter-
2913 nal wave energy is increased throughout the water column. The largest differences
2914 in diffusivity (as compared with the control run) are still seen towards the bottom,

7.3. DIFFUSIVITY

2915 however. These differences can be both positive and negative depending on the ex-
2916 act location, and there seem to be little direct correlation between these differences
2917 and lee wave energy or energy transfer at the specific locations. Rather they are cor-
2918 related with changes in the local buoyancy frequency. Furthermore, an increase in
2919 diffusivity compared to the control run is still observed in the interior ocean in Fig.
2920 5.30. This shows how the propagation of internal wave energy is of great importance
2921 to the diffusivity modelled by IDEMIX. Another sensitivity experiment, which could
2922 could be of obvious interest, would therefore be to vary the vertical decay scale of
2923 both the lee wave energy and the internal wave energy, or to vary the transfer coef-
2924 ficient α . Changes in these parameters would influence the variation with depth of
2925 both lee wave energy and the transfer to the background internal wave field. Previ-
2926 ous studies which effectively although not directly involving the propagation of lee
2927 waves reveal a weaker although qualitatively similar effect on lee wave driven mix-
2928 ing. In general, little is known about the vertical propagation of lee waves (Melet
2929 et al., 2015), and this results in the poor constraints in the implementation. Still, ob-
2930 servational studies have shown lee waves to propagate far from their generation site
2931 and contribute to internal mixing in the interior (Meyer et al., 2015a).

2932 The specific implementation of the lee wave module into the IDEMIX model is
2933 done mainly because of the different shape in wavenumber space of the lee waves
2934 and the rest of the internal wave field and because of a frequency mismatch. The
2935 practicality of separating the lee wave module with the rest of internal wave model
2936 is thus meaningful, but when it comes to wave breaking and subsequently mixing
2937 the separation is perhaps somewhat arbitrary. There is no theoretical argument why
2938 the breaking of lee waves would not directly affect ocean mixing. Despite discrep-
2939 ancies between observed dissipation rates and that predicted from lee wave theory
2940 (Waterman et al., 2013; Sheen et al., 2013), Cusack et al. (2017) reports TKE dissi-
2941 pation rates of $10^{-7} W/kg$ within a lee wave in the Shackleton Fracture Zone in the
2942 Drake Passage. As such, the energy transfer from the lee wave to the background in-
2943 ternal wave field predicted in this study is not contradicted by what is (to the author’s
2944 knowledge) the only direct observation of lee wave driven mixing.

2945 The effect on diffusivity (as *best* quantified by the difference between the base
2946 and control experiments) due to the lee wave energy transfer at a single grid point is
2947 difficult to quantify though, because it relies on the *local* balance of TKE. Before any
2948 effects of differences in the local buoyancy frequency and the advection of internal
2949 wave energy is taken into account, however, the difference in diffusivity must be pro-
2950 portional to the energy transfer (or rather to the square of the energy transfer, since
2951 the diffusivity is proportional to the square of the internal wave energy). A recur-
2952 ring image throughout the study is that contrary to what might have been expected,
2953 the diffusivity near the bottom is not increased (*universally*, at least), no matter the
2954 IDEMIX or lee wave parameters. This is, however, due to an increase in buoyancy
2955 frequency near the bottom. At $37^\circ N$ the diffusivity near the bottom exhibits both
2956 significant increases and significant decreases depending on the longitude, but the
2957 internal wave energy is significantly increased in the entire water column, where
2958 energy is transferred from lee waves at the bottom. The internal wave energy being
2959 increased *throughout* the water column, and not just near the bottom, can thus in-
2960 terpreted as a result of the lee waves disturbing the *local* balance of TKE. Because

7.4. OUTLOOK

2961 the background internal wave energy is then allowed to propagate upwards, the in-
2962 crease in internal wave energy is also shifted upwards until the local balance of TKE
2963 is reached.

2964 Although the largest numerical differences in diffusivity is best correlated with
2965 changes in the buoyancy frequency, the lack of increase in diffusivity near the bot-
2966 tom is also some degree the result of the lee wave compartment not being directly
2967 linked with the diffusivity. The formulation chosen in this model is based on en-
2968 ergy transfer from low to high vertical wavenumbers as shown by Olbers (1976), but
2969 the underlying assumption of this scaling is that the internal wave energy takes on a
2970 GM-spectrum shape, which is precisely not the assumption for the lee wave energy
2971 in the model. In general the energy exchange between lee waves and internal grav-
2972 ity wave or simply between waves of different energy spectra is an unexplored field,
2973 and the further research into this area is needed in order to formulate a more robust
2974 energy transfer term in this model.

2975 An alternative formulation would, obviously, be to couple the lee wave field *di-*
2976 *rectly* to the diffusivity on par with the background internal wave energy. Such a for-
2977 mulation would most likely increase the sensitivity of the diffusivity to the lee wave
2978 parameter settings; the topography and critical inverse Froude Number. Further-
2979 more, it would probably also shift the increase in diffusivity towards the bottom, as
2980 the vertical propagation of internal wave energy would become less important. The
2981 effect of lee waves on the buoyancy frequency remain an open question, however.
2982 The theoretical argument for lee waves increasing buoyancy frequency near the bot-
2983 tom is unclear, but it is possible that a different coupling of the lee wave field and the
2984 background internal wave field can elucidate this question as well.

2985 7.4 Outlook

2986 As such, there are two clear further investigations which can be carried out within
2987 the framework of the current model formulation; a detailed examination of the cor-
2988 relation and dependence of the lee wave energy flux on the unresolved eddy kinetic
2989 energy with the scope of formulating a parameterization of this dependence, and
2990 the effect of a *direct* coupling of the lee wave energy field to the diffusivity as calcu-
2991 lated by IDEMIX. Whereas the former requires a more thorough statistical analysis
2992 than provided here in order to obtain a realistic amount and distribution of lee wave
2993 energy, the latter requires a reformulation of the current lee wave-diffusivity cou-
2994 pling, and since such a coupling would likely be dependent on the lee wave energy
2995 (as is the energy transfer term in the current formulation) and also an investigation
2996 of the effect the transfer coefficient α_{uw} .

2997 Furthermore, the large lee wave energy and energy flux found in every model
2998 used in this study in the Denmark Strait is also a potentially rewarding topic. This
2999 is a region characterized by the overflows of deep water formed in the Nordic Seas
3000 into the Atlantic, which is of great importance to the AMOC, why its representa-
3001 tion in ocean models is crucial (Legg et al., 2009; Danabasoglu et al., 2014). Mixing
3002 from mesoscale eddies has been reported to modulate water property changes in
3003 the region, while also suggesting that internal waves may be important in the water

7.4. OUTLOOK

3004 transformation process (Koszalka et al., 2017). In light of this, the diffusivity induced
3005 by lee waves as well as the significant wave-mean flow interaction suggested in this
3006 study could be of importance in the region.

3007 Chapter 8

3008 Final Conclusions

3009 The implementation of a lee wave module in IDEMIX has been thoroughly investi-
3010 gated across several model setups and experiments using different parameter set-
3011 tings. Comparisons of a coarse non-eddy resolving global model with a horizon-
3012 tal resolution of 2° and an eddy resolving global model of $1/10^\circ$ horizontal resolu-
3013 tion, first and foremost demonstrates how the lee wave generation, as quantified by
3014 the bottom energy flux, varies significantly with resolution; from $0.0114TW$ in the
3015 coarse resolution model to $0.262TW$ in the high resolution model. The increase in
3016 energy flux is in large part due to the resolved eddy field and the high bottom ve-
3017 locities associated with deep reaching eddies. As such, the energy flux is increased
3018 by several orders of magnitude along the North Atlantic Current and in the eastern
3019 section of the Southern Ocean. Comparing two setups of the regional FLAME model
3020 of the North Atlantic adopted in pyOM - one using an eddy-permitting resolution
3021 of $1/3^\circ$, and one using an eddy-resolving resolution of $1/12^\circ$ - reinforces this image.
3022 The largest differences in lee wave generation are here attributed to the increases
3023 in regions of a visible eddying flow. Integrating the energy flux over the two model
3024 domains reveal a six time increase in the high-resolution model.

3025 In the $1/12^\circ$ regional FLAME model setup the lee wave field constitutes a major
3026 fraction of the total internal wave field (lee waves plus background internal waves);
3027 in some regions even by far the largest part. By far the bulk of the lee wave energy is
3028 situated below $3000m$ depth. The lee waves are able to remove significant momen-
3029 tum from the mean flow resulting in decreases in bottom velocities of more than
3030 $0.1m/s$ in high generation regions, most noticeably the western and northern At-
3031 lantic and the Denmark Strait. In regions of high lee wave energy these decreases
3032 can in large part be persistent throughout much of the water column. In the current
3033 implementation the lee wave field is connected to the internal gravity wave field via
3034 an energy transfer term $\alpha_{ww}E_{iw}E_{lee}$. This energy transfer constitutes the route by
3035 which most of the lee wave energy dissipates - the other way being through inter-
3036 action with the mean flow which can transfer energy both from the mean flow to
3037 the lee wave field and vice versa - and the lee wave field is in many areas in an ap-
3038 proximate balance between the energy flux at the bottom and the energy transfer to
3039 the background internal wave field. This energy transfer also form the connection

3040 between the lee wave field and the diffusivity. Although the lee wave energy is most
3041 heavily concentrated below 3000m the lee waves act mostly, in the current model
3042 formulation, to increase the diffusivity in the interior. While diffusivities are often
3043 decreased near the bottom (due to an increase in buoyancy frequency), the interior
3044 ocean exhibits relative increases in diffusivity by up to a whole order of magnitude.
3045 These diffusivity increases in the interior are clearly linked to regions of elevated
3046 internal wave energy resulting from energy transfer from the lee wave field.

3047 Four experiments using the IDEMIX parameter values of Olbers and Eden (2013)
3048 were carried out to investigate the sensitivity of the lee wave module to the two es-
3049 sential topography settings; the isotropic vs. anisotropic spectrum and the value of
3050 the critical inverse Froude Number set to $Fr_c = 0.75$ and $Fr_c = 0.5$, respectively. The
3051 bottom lee wave energy flux integrated over the entire model domain was found to
3052 vary very little although systematically with both the topography spectrum and the
3053 critical inverse Froude Number. Ranging from $F_{glob,A075} = 0.0612TW$ to $F_{glob,I05} =$
3054 $0.0641TW$ the largest difference across these four experiments was $0.0029TW$. Fur-
3055 thermore, both the horizontally integrated lee wave energy as a function of depth
3056 and the geographical distribution of lee wave energy showed very small differences
3057 across the four experiments. The bottom lee wave stress on the other hand showed
3058 significant differences between the experiments using the isotropic and those using
3059 the anisotropic topography spectrum. In general, the zonal-component of the bot-
3060 tom stress was numerically reduced while the meridional component was numeri-
3061 cally greatly increased with the anisotropic spectrum, resulting in an increase of the
3062 magnitude of the stress by close to 40% of that of the base experiment. This implies a
3063 shift in angle towards the meridional with the anisotropic topography spectrum, but
3064 a closer investigation of the bottom stress in the western Atlantic and the Denmark
3065 Strait revealed that this very much depends on the region in question.

3066 Two additional experiments were carried out using the IDEMIX parameter val-
3067 ues found by Pollmann et al. (2017); one using the isotropic topography spectrum
3068 and the other using the anisotropic spectrum. Comparing results from these two
3069 with those of the base experiment revealed a much larger sensitivity to the IDEMIX
3070 parameters. Because of a lower value of the energy transfer coefficient α_{ww} (which
3071 depends on the IDEMIX paramters μ_0 , j_* and τ_v) the energy transfer to the internal
3072 wave field was significantly reduced, thereby causing an increase by an order of mag-
3073 nitude of the vertically integrated lee wave energy in many regions. The diffusivity is
3074 still increased in the interior in the two IDEMIX parameter sensitivity experiments,
3075 but not as much as in the previous four topography sensitivity experiments due to
3076 the lower energy transfer from the lee wave compartment to the internal wave com-
3077 partment.

3078 Comparing the vertically averaged total internal wave (i.e. background plus
3079 lee wave) energy in the Atlantic with internal wave energy estimates derived from
3080 ARGO-data has not revealed a strict contradiction between the two. This compari-
3081 son has also shown to be troublesome, though, due to the discrepancy between the
3082 depth at which the bulk of the lee wave energy is situated and the depth at which the
3083 coverage of the ARGO data is satisfactory. Regions in which lee wave energy is situ-
3084 ated at relatively shallow depths (for instance over the Mid Atlantic Ridge near the
3085 Azores), has exhibited energy levels, which might be an overestimation compared to

3086 the ARGO-data.

3087 In the $1/10^\circ$ model the lee wave-mean flow interaction has been shown to be of
3088 greater importance in the Southern Ocean as compared to that in the northern At-
3089 lantic in the $1/12^\circ$ model. In the Southern Ocean the energy energy exchange with
3090 the mean flow can locally be as larger as the transfer to the background internal wave
3091 field. The general trend is that the lee waves transfer energy to the mean flow near
3092 the bottom, while the opposite transfer takes place in the interior. As such, the lee
3093 wave-mean flow interaction can significantly impact the vertical profile of lee wave
3094 energy. The dissipation rates of turbulent kinetic energy simulated by the model are
3095 elevated in regions of high lee wave activity in agreement with several observation
3096 estimates (Sheen et al., 2013; Brearley et al., 2013; Waterman et al., 2013). These re-
3097 sults reinforce the image that lee waves can have significant impact on mixing in
3098 the Southern Ocean, but they also highlight the potential route of lee wave energy
3099 removal via mean flow interaction, which has previously been suggested as a pos-
3100 sible explanation for the discrepancy between observed and simulated mixing rates
3101 (Waterman et al., 2013).

3102 All in all, the combined results presented in this thesis provides a clear image
3103 of lee waves being able to significantly affect the mean flow and dissipation. The
3104 sensitivity of lee wave generation to model resolution opens a possible investigation
3105 of a parameterization of the lee wave field based on the eddy kinetic energy, while
3106 possible alternatives to the current implementation, such as a direct link between
3107 the diffusivity and the lee wave energy compartment, is also worthy of examination.
3108 Furthermore, the difficulty in comparing the ARGO-derived estimates of internal
3109 wave energy with the lee wave energy simulated by the model, highlight the need
3110 for direct and/or indirect observations of lee waves to provide realistic constraints
3111 in ocean models.

3112 Appendix A

3113 Additional results from 3114 topography sensitivity 3115 experiments

3116 Several figures in section 5 contain images including only results from the base ex-
3117 periment, *I075*. All of these figures have been made with results from all lee wave
3118 parameter sensitivity experiments, i.e. using original IDEMIX parameters but vary-
3119 ing topography spectrum and inverse Froude Number. They were absent in section
3120 5, because the general image is that the difference between these four experiments
3121 is rather small compared to their respective difference to the control run. However
3122 a few of them is shown here for documentation purposes.

3123 The biggest difference between the four topography sensitivity experiments is
3124 as mentioned in the bottom lee wave stress, where there is an increase of roughly
3125 40% when using the anisotropic spectrum, as already pointed out in table 5.1. Nev-
3126 ertheless, the documentation of said differences (or lack thereof) is important for
3127 choice of parameters in the implementation of a lee wave component in IDEMIX.
3128 Since the difference in bottom stress is already showed in section 5.3 and the verti-
3129 cally integrated pseudo-momentum flux does not vary much, I show here only the
3130 psuedo-momentum flux of the four topography sensitivity experiments in a transect
3131 at $37^\circ N$ in Fig. A.1

3132 As an important part of the effect of lee waves on the ocean state the diffusivity
3133 at 37° was also calculated for all topography sensitivity experiments at $37^\circ N$. As with
3134 the pseudo-momentum flux, the differences between the four experiments remain
3135 small, but a comparison is shown in Fig. A.2

3136 As mentioned in section 5.2 the largest differences in the diffusivity between the
3137 base and control experiments are found near the bottom, and here the control ex-
3138 periments exhibits the largest diffusivity contrary to what might have been expected.
3139 The diffusivity is increased in the interior rather than at the bottom as a result of
3140 the implementation of the lee wave module. This is documented in Fig. A.3, which
3141 shows the difference (*upper panel*) and relative difference (*lower panel*) in diffusivity

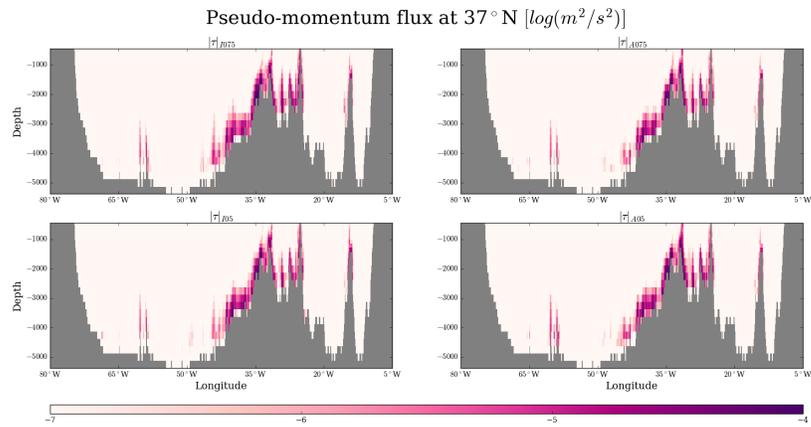


Figure A.1: The pseudo-momentum flux at $37^\circ N$ for all four topography sensitivity experiments. Even though the bottom stress varies substantially between the four experiment, the variation of the stress is remarkably similar throughout the experiments.

3142 at $37^\circ N$. While the largest numerical diffusivity difference occurs near the bottom,
 3143 the interior displays a relative difference in diffusivity, which is far larger than that
 3144 at the bottom. At several longitudes the relative difference is more than an order
 3145 of magnitude larger in the control experiment. The patches of irregular diffusivity
 3146 between $1500m$ depth and the surface mentioned in section 5.2 is rendered as neg-
 3147 ligible numerical differences. The important aspect of this figure, is the document-
 3148 tation of the large increase in diffusivity in the interior relative to that of the control
 3149 experiment.

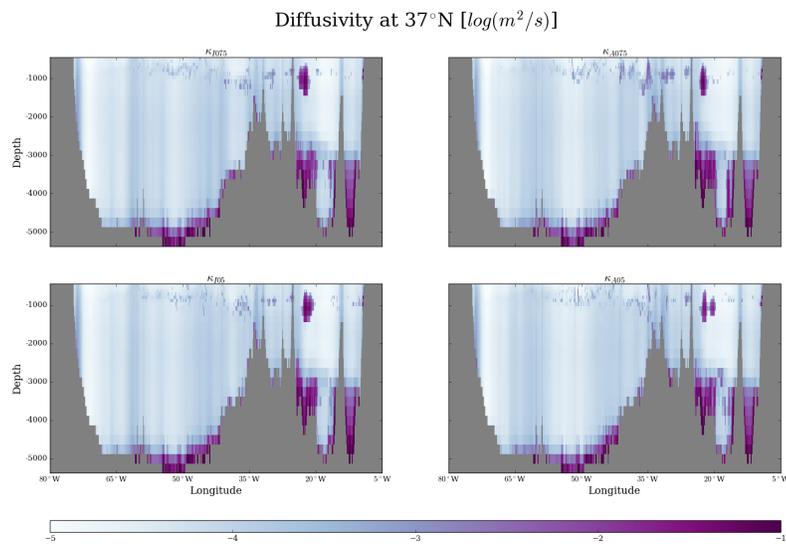


Figure A.2: The diffusivity at 37°N for all four topography sensitivity experiments. In all experiments are the diffusivity in the interior of magnitude $10^{-4} m^2/s$ at many longitudes.

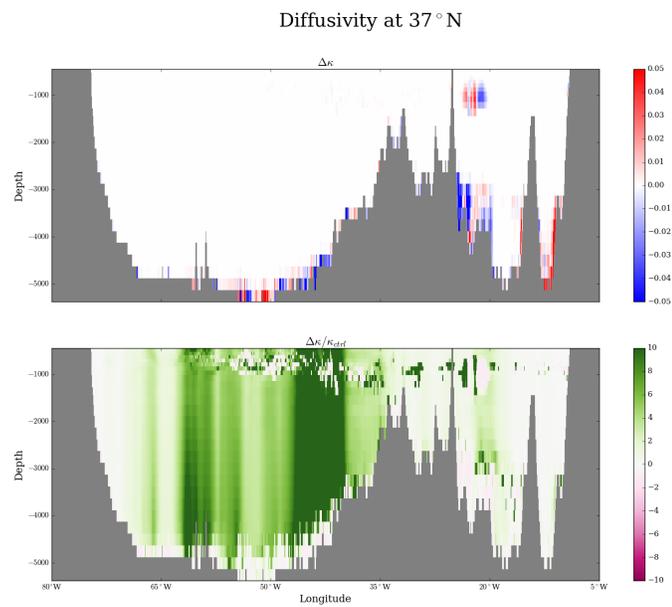


Figure A.3: The difference (*upper panel*) and relative difference (*lower panel*) in diffusivity between the base and control experiment at 37°N. Even though the largest numerical differences are near the bottom, it is clear how in the interior the diffusivity is increased by a factor of 10 or more in the base experiment.

3150 List of Figures

3151 3152 3153 3154 3155 3156	1.1 The global overturning circulation centered on the Southern Ocean (Talley, 2013), where both Pacific, Indian and North Atlantic Deep water rises towards the surface, and Subantarctic MODE Water flows into the three oceans, and Antarctic Bottom Water is formed. In the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Ocean the Antarctic Bottom Water mixes with the respective deep water via internal mixing.	3
3157 3158	1.2 A schematic overview of sources of internal wave generation and interior ocean mixing taken from MacKinnon (2013).	6
3159 3160 3161 3162 3163 3164 3165	3.1 The four parameters of the topographic spectrum; <i>upper left</i> shows the root-mean-square topographic height, h_{rms} , in meters, <i>upper right</i> shows the strike-angle, ϕ_s in degrees, <i>bottom left</i> shows topographic wavenumber in strike direction k_s and <i>bottom right</i> shows the topographic wavenumber normal to the strike direction, k_n . Both <i>bottom left</i> and <i>bottom right</i> are in units of $1/m$, but take notice of the different colorbar range. In general $k_n > k_s$	36
3166 3167 3168 3169 3170 3171 3172	4.1 <i>Left panel</i> shows the bottom lee wave energy flux from the 2° global model. The flux is largest in the Southern Ocean and tropical Atlantic, where it reaches magnitudes between 10^{-6} and $10^{-5} W/m^2$. In the midlatitude Atlantic and Eastern Pacific magnitudes are often below 10^{-7} <i>Right panel</i> shows the bottom speed from the 2° global model. The strongest bottom flows occur in the Southern Ocean near Drake Passage with speeds close to $0.1 m/s$	38
3173 3174 3175 3176 3177 3178	4.2 <i>Left panel</i> shows the bottom lee wave energy flux from the $1/10^\circ$ global model. The flux is largest in the North Atlantic and in the Southern Ocean. Values here are roughly $10^{-4} W/m^2$. <i>Right panel</i> shows the bottom speed from the $1/10^\circ$ global model. The strongest bottom flows occur in the Southern Ocean near Drake Passage with speeds close to $0.1 m/s$	39

LIST OF FIGURES

3179 4.3 *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy from the 2°
3180 model. The energy is largest in the tropical Atlantic and Pacific, where
3181 values reach $10^1 m^3/s^2$. In most other regions the lee wave energy is
3182 two orders of magnitude lower than that. Compared to the energy
3183 flux itself, the energy tends to accumulate more in the tropical regions
3184 than in the mid- and high latitudes *Right panel* shows the vertically
3185 integrated lee wave energy from the $1/10^\circ$ model. Contrary to the en-
3186 ergy flux the largest energy levels are found in the Atlantic along the
3187 North Atlantic Current with values of $10^2 m^3/s^2$. In the high latitudes
3188 the energy is at least three orders of magnitude larger than that of the
3189 2° model, whereas the energy levels in the tropical Atlantic and Pa-
3190 cific are of similar magnitude. Notice that the different panel sizes are
3191 due to different data dimension and are chosen so as not to distort
3192 these dimensions. 40

3193 4.4 *Left panel* shows the vertically integrated energy transfer from the lee
3194 wave field to the background internal wave field in the 2° model. The
3195 largest energy transfer of $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$ is found around the Drake Pas-
3196 sage. *Right panel* shows the same transfer for the $1/10^\circ$ model. In
3197 the high resolution model the large energy transfer of magnitudes
3198 $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$ clearly follow the North Atlantic Current and the ACC,
3199 where in the coarse resolution model the energy transfer is more local-
3200 ized. In both models mid- and high latitudes show much larger energy
3201 transfer than tropical regions. 41

3202 4.5 *Right panel* shows the bottom energy flux from the $1/3^\circ$ model. The
3203 energy flux reaches $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in the Denmark Strait, but in the cen-
3204 tral Atlantic it remains at least one order of magnitude lower. *Left*
3205 *panel* shows the bottom speed from the $1/3^\circ$ model. The bottom speed
3206 reaches $0.1 m/s$ in many coastal regions, but in the central Atlantic it is
3207 mostly below $0.2 m/s$. Some eddy activity is seen in the western At-
3208 lantic, which is also translated into lee wave generation, but the mag-
3209 nitude is small compared to that in the Denmark Strat. 43

3210 4.6 *Left panel* shows the energy flux from the base experiment using
3211 the $1/12^\circ$ regional FLAME model. The energy flux reaches a mag-
3212 nitude larger than $10^{-4} W/m^2$ in the Denmark Strait and larger than
3213 $10^{-5} W/m^2$ in many areas in the midlatitude western, central and
3214 northern Atlantic. *Right panel* shows the bottom speed from the same
3215 experiment. Magnitudes between 0.05 and $0.1 m/s$ is not uncommon
3216 in many parts of the western and northern Atlantic. The bottom speed
3217 bears a significant eddying signature along the North Atlantic Current. 44

LIST OF FIGURES

3218	4.7	<i>Left panel</i> shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy from the $1/3^\circ$ model. Lee wave energy reaches $10^2 m^3/s^2$ in the tropical Atlantic and $10 m^3/s^2$ in the subtropics and western Atlantic. <i>Right panel</i> shows the same for the $1/12^\circ$ model. The highest vertically integrated lee wave energy has roughly the same magnitude of $10^2 m^3/s^2$, but is located in the western Atlantic. As such the increased resolution does not necessarily bring about a stronger lee wave field, but rather affects the geographical distribution of lee wave energy.	45
3219			
3220			
3221			
3222			
3223			
3224			
3225			
3226	4.8	<i>Left panel</i> shows the vertically integrated energy transfer from the lee wave field to the background internal wave field from the $1/3^\circ$ model. By far largest in the Denmark Strait the energy transfer is here $10^{-4} m^3/s^3$, whereas much of the rest of the model domain shows magnitudes smaller than $10^{-5} m^3/s^3$. <i>Right panel</i> shows the same for the $1/12^\circ$ model. The highest energy transfer is also here in the Denmark Strait, but much of the central Atlantic also exhibits energy transfer larger than $10^{-5} m^3/s^2$	45
3227			
3228			
3229			
3230			
3231			
3232			
3233			
3234	5.1	The bottom lee wave energy flux is largest along the North Atlantic current and especially in the Northern Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. Notice the logarithmic scale.	48
3235			
3236			
3237	5.2	The bottom speed is naturally largest near the boundaries, where it is shallower. Large velocities associated with the eddy field is visible in the Western Atlantic and along the North Atlantic Current. Left panel shows the bottom speed in the entire model domain with only land shown in grey. <i>Right panel</i> shows the bottom speed with the mask from the topography data set applied greying out regions where lee wave generation is inhibited as well.	50
3238			
3239			
3240			
3241			
3242			
3243			
3244	5.3	Magnitude of the bottom stress caused by lee waves are largest in the western Atlantic, the midlatitude Atlantic and in the Denmark Strait, where it reaches values between $10^{-3} m^2/s^2$ and $10^{-4} m^2/s^2$. In general the stress is large along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and lower in the eastern and western part of the basin. Black boxes indicate two regions where the differences between experiments are examined.	51
3245			
3246			
3247			
3248			
3249			
3250	5.4	The integrated bottom energy flux varies somewhat with time, which could indicate that the eddy field is contributing to lee wave generation in some areas. The bottom stress on the other hand is remarkably steady over the course of the simulation. Notice that both the energy flux and stress have been scaled by their respective maxima and thus appear as dimensionless quantities.	52
3251			
3252			
3253			
3254			
3255			
3256	5.5	The vertically integrated lee wave energy is largest in the western Atlantic and in the Denmark Strait.	53
3257			
3258	5.6	The vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux is largest in the Denmark Strait and in the northern and mid-latitude Atlantic.	54
3259			

LIST OF FIGURES

3260	5.7	The ratio of vertically integrated lee wave and background energy shows the background internal wave field is in much of the ocean up to 10 times, but also that in few hotspots lee wave energy dominate by the same factor. Values are $\log(R)$	55
3261			
3262			
3263			
3264	5.8	Lee wave energy and pseudo-momentum flux from lee waves in a transect at $37^\circ N$. The lee waves itself is large near the bottom at all longitudes, but the pseudo-momentum flux only remove momentum from the mean flow between roughly 55° and $30^\circ W$. Here the pseudo-momentum flux act on roughly the bottom 1000 – 1500m of the ocean at their generation site. Notice values are logarithmic values of actual energy and pseudo-momentum flux.	56
3265			
3266			
3267			
3268			
3269			
3270			
3271	5.9	The zonally averaged pseudo-momentum flux shows a large drag the mean flow between roughly 5000 – 2000m depth and between the equator and $55^\circ N$. The largest drag on the mean flow, though, occurs close $60^\circ N$ between 1800m depth and the surface.	57
3272			
3273			
3274			
3275	5.10	The zonally averaged lee wave energy is largest near the bottom. Contrary to the pseudo-momentum flux it is nearly everywhere largest in the bottom most grid cells	58
3276			
3277			
3278	5.11	The zonally average internal wave energy	59
3279	5.12	The <i>upper panel</i> shows the energy transfer to the background internal wave field. Its distribution follows very closely the distribution of the lee wave field and reaches maxima of $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$ near the bottom over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and below 4000m depth near $45^\circ N$. The <i>middle panel</i> shows the transfer to the mean flow, which is very localized over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. The <i>lower panel</i> shows the transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field. This transfer also shows maxima over the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. In general the mean flow exchanges are at least an order of magnitude smaller than the transfer to the internal wave field.	60
3280			
3281			
3282			
3283			
3284			
3285			
3286			
3287			
3288			
3289	5.13	The <i>upper left panel</i> shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy. The <i>upper right panel</i> shows the energy transfer to the background internal wave field, which is the largest energy transfer in a vertically integrated sense. The <i>lower left panel</i> shows the energy transfer from the lee wave compartment to the mean flow. This is very localized with a very large transfer in the Denmark Strait but very small in the rest of the model domain. The <i>bottom right panel</i> shows the energy transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave compartment. This transfer happens predominantly in the eastern subtropical or in the Northern Atlantic, but it is in general a factor of 10 or more smaller than the transfer to the internal wave compartment.	61
3290			
3291			
3292			
3293			
3294			
3295			
3296			
3297			
3298			
3299			

LIST OF FIGURES

3300	5.14 Key variables at 37°N: <i>Upper left</i> : Lee wave energy is largest near the bottom west of 40°W; <i>upper middle</i> : The energy transfer between the lee wave and background internal wave domain follows largely the distribution of the lee wave energy; <i>upper right</i> : the background IW energy is fairly evenly distributed over the transect, but the magnitude is significantly lower than the maximum lee wave energy and it decreases towards the bottom; <i>lower left</i> the diffusivity difference is by far numerically largest near the bottom, where it is both negative and positive. Values of $\pm 0.1 m^2/s$ are significantly higher than the canonical Munk value of 10^{-4} ; <i>lower middle</i> : the relative difference in N^2 is little throughout much of the transect but near the bottom it is of larger magnitude (both negative and positive). Close to 20°W there is a region of rather large magnitude, which is replicated as a decrease in diffusivity; <i>lower right</i> the relative difference in background internal wave energy is very large throughout the western part of the transect. It is very clear that the transfer of lee wave energy near the bottom just west of 40°W is seen throughout the water column in as an increase in internal wave energy. It is, however, not as apparent in the diffusivity.	65
3301		
3302		
3303		
3304		
3305		
3306		
3307		
3308		
3309		
3310		
3311		
3312		
3313		
3314		
3315		
3316		
3317		
3318	5.15 The lee wave energy (<i>upper left panel</i>) is largest on the west of roughly 15°W, where it reaches $10^{-2} m^2/s^2$ near the bottom. The energy transfer to the background internal wave energy (<i>upper middle panel</i>) reaches $10^{-7} m^2 s/3$ on the western side of the ridge, but decreases towards the east on the eastern side. This is mirrored in the internal wave energy (<i>upper right panel</i>), which is elevated on the western side of the ridge, with relative increases by more than a factor of three (<i>lower right panel</i>). The diffusivity is decreased (<i>lower left panel</i>) near the bottom on the western side, though, which correlate with increase in buoyancy frequency (<i>lower middle panel</i>).	66
3319		
3320		
3321		
3322		
3323		
3324		
3325		
3326		
3327		
3328	5.16 The diffusivity is decreased towards the bottom and increased in the northern Atlantic in a tongue between 55° and 60°N extending some 2500m	68
3329		
3330		
3331	5.17 The numerical difference in N^2 is larger at intermediate depth, but the relative difference remain largest at the bottom. The decrease in N^2 close to 55° is a decrease of about 2 – % relative to the control run.	69
3332		
3333		
3334	5.18 The difference in bottom velocity shows a general sink of bottom momentum over the model domain, but especially in the Western and Northern Atlantic.	71
3335		
3336		
3337	5.19 The difference in velocity between experiment I075 and the control a 37°N is clearly negative where the pseudo-momentum flux is largest over the Mid Atlantic Ridge, showing the effect of lee waves.	72
3338		
3339		

LIST OF FIGURES

3340 5.20 Velocity difference $\Delta|U| = |U|_{ctrl} - |U|_{I075}$ at four different depths. *bot-*
3341 *tom right panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-4000}$. Here the largest decrease is found
3342 in the western Atlantic. *Bottom left panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-3000}$, where
3343 the decrease in the western Atlantic persist clearly. Decreases found
3344 at 4000m in other regions does not as clearly persist. *Upper right*
3345 *panel* shows $\Delta|U|_{z=-2000}$, where smaller local fluctuations emerge and
3346 the effect of lee waves is less clear. The decrease in the western At-
3347 lantic does still persist to some degree, though. *Upper left panel* shows
3348 $\Delta|U|_{z=-1000}$, where the effect of lee waves is even more unclear, al-
3349 though a few areas of clear decrease in the central Atlantic. At this
3350 depth a clear decrease southwest of Iceland, which coincide with a re-
3351 gion of large bottom stress, is also just possible to see. 73

3352 5.21 The difference in the lee wave energy flux at the bottom is largest along
3353 the North Atlantic Current and in the Denmark Strait. The sign of the
3354 difference vary locally, however. 74

3355 5.22 The difference in bottom lee wave stress, $F_{diff} = F_{exp} - F_{base}$, between
3356 the base lee wave run $F_{base} = F_{I075}$ and the other three experiments is
3357 clearly largest when the topographic spectrum is changed rather than
3358 the critical Froude number. 76

3359 5.23 Difference in bottom stresses in the four topography sensitivity exper-
3360 iments are shown for two distinct regions; the western Atlantic and the
3361 Denmark Strait. Upper panels shows bottom stress in the western At-
3362 lantic and bottom panels the Denmark Strait. τ_{I075}^2 is plotted along
3363 the x-axis in all panels - in the *leftmost panels* against τ_{A075}^2 , in the
3364 middle panels against τ_{I05}^2 , and in the *rightmost panels* against τ_{A05}^2 . A
3365 single dot represents the (square of) the bottom stress in the respec-
3366 tive experiments. Changing the topography spectrum clearly shifts
3367 the bottom stress towards larger values, whereas changing the critical
3368 Froude Number does not significantly change the bottom stress. 77

3369 5.24 Angle of the bottom stress with horizontal for two distinct regions; the
3370 western Atlantic and the Denmark Strait. *Upper panels* show the direc-
3371 tion of the stress in the western Atlantic. The difference between the
3372 respective experiments is largest between experiment *I075* and *I05*,
3373 where there is a clear rotation of the stress towards the East. This ro-
3374 tation is not apparent in any of the other experiments. The *lower pan-*
3375 *els* show the direction of the stress in the Denmark Strait. Here the
3376 change with the critical Froude Number is minimal, but there is a sys-
3377 tematic change with the topography spectrum. This is concluded from
3378 the very low differences seen in the *lower middle panel* and the large
3379 similarities between the *lower left* and *lower right* panels. Overall the
3380 change in direction of the bottom stress with either topography or crit-
3381 ical Froude Number thus depends on the region examined. 78

3382 5.25 Amount of lee wave energy at each depth index (*left panel*) and the cu-
3383 mulative lee wave energy (*right panel*). Most lee wave energy is found
3384 in the deep ocean, and only about 10% at depths shallower than 2000m 80

LIST OF FIGURES

3385 5.26 The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated lee wave energy in the
3386 base experiment (*I075*, isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The *mid-*
3387 *dle panel* shows the same for experiment with *P17* IDEMIX parame-
3388 ter values and isotropic spectrum (*P17I*) and the *right panel* shows it
3389 with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic spectrum
3390 (*P17A*). The lee wave energy is larger throughout the entire model do-
3391 main using the parameters values of Pollmann et al. (2017) 81

3392 5.27 The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated internal wave energy in
3393 the base experiment (*I075*, isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The
3394 *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with the *P17* IDEMIX
3395 parameter values and isotropic spectrum, *P17I* and the *right panel*
3396 shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the anisotropic
3397 spectrum, *P17A* 81

3398 5.28 The lee wave energy (*left panel*) is much larger in the experiments *P17I*
3399 and *P17A* than in the rest of the experiments. This does not result in a
3400 larger energy transfer to the background internal wave domain (*mid-*
3401 *dle panel*), however. This is due to the α -parameter being directly af-
3402 fected by the new IDEMIX parameters. In general the energy transfer
3403 to the internal wave domain is shifted vertically as compared to the
3404 lee wave energy. The energy transfer to the mean flow (*right panel*) is
3405 very similar in all experiments, and below 2000m depth much smaller
3406 than that to the internal wave compartment. At roughly 700 to 500m
3407 depth the two energy transfer are of equal magnitude (integrated over
3408 the model domain) 83

3409 5.29 The *upper panel* lee wave energy at 37°N in the base experiment (*I075*,
3410 isotropic spectrum and $Fr_c = 0.75$). The *middle panel* shows the same
3411 for experiment with *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spec-
3412 trum, *P17I* and the *lower panel* shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX param-
3413 eter values and the anisotropic spectrum, *P17A* 84

3414 5.30 The diffusivity at 37°N in the three experiments *I075* (*upper left*, *P17I*
3415 (*upper right*, *P17A* (*lower left*, and in the control run without lee waves
3416 (*lower right*). In all cases the diffusivity is of similar magnitude near
3417 the bottom, but away from the bottom it is in general a factor of 10 (or
3418 more) larger in the three experiments with lee waves. 85

3419 5.31 The *left panel* shows the vertically integrated pseudo-momentum flux
3420 using the original IDEMIX parameters, isotropic topography spectrum
3421 and $Fr_c = 0.75$. The *middle panel* shows the same for experiment with
3422 *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and isotropic spectrum (*P17I*) and the
3423 *right panel* shows it with the *P17* IDEMIX parameter values and the
3424 anisotropic spectrum (*P17A*) 86

LIST OF FIGURES

3425 5.32 Lee wave energy has been vertically averaged in four different depth
3426 ranges in order to compare with ARGO data from Pollmann (2020).
3427 Lee wave energy in the midlatitude central Atlantic is present between
3428 2000 and 1000m depth (*upper left panel*), where the majority of en-
3429 ergy in the northern Atlantic is also present. In the Denmark Strait the
3430 lee wave energy emerges above 1000m (*lower left panel*) but is only
3431 fully visible above 500m depth (*lower left panel*). The average lee wave
3432 energy in the between 2000 and 300m depth is shown in the *upper*
3433 *left panel*, where lee wave energy in midlatitude and northern Atlantic
3434 and in the Denmark Strait is largest. The energy levels at these depths
3435 are not easily compared with those found by Pollmann (2020), since
3436 internal wave energy derived from ARGO data does not fully cover all
3437 these regions at the depths in questions. In the particular regions and
3438 depths where comparison is possible, energy levels here do not con-
3439 tradict those derived from ARGO data. 89

3440 5.33 The vertically averaged internal and lee wave energy in four depth bins
3441 shows the prominence of lee wave generation in the central midlati-
3442 tude and northern Atlantic in both the full depth range 2000 – 300m
3443 (*upper left panel*) but especially in between 2000 and 1000m depth
3444 (*upper right panel*). Above 1000m the prominence of these two re-
3445 gions subsides. In the *lower left panel* showing average energy levels at
3446 1000–500m the prominence of the Denmark Strait is more visible, and
3447 above 500m depth (*lower right panel*) this region is fully visible, but not
3448 as prominent. Values of between $10^{-3} m^2 / s^2$ and $10^{-2} m^2 / s^2$ at depths
3449 at 1000 – 300m reflects well those of the ARGO derived data. Below
3450 1000m depth the coverage of the ARGO data is substantially lowered
3451 making a comparison more difficult. 91

3452 6.1 The bottom lee wave energy flux is largest in the Southern Ocean and
3453 in the North Atlantic, where it reaches values of $10^{-4} W / m^2$, and barely
3454 present in much of the Pacific. The yellow lines indicates sections
3455 across which transects were made. 97

3456 6.2 The lee wave energy (*upper left panel*) is present along the entire tran-
3457 sect line and often acts on the lowest kilometer in the water column.
3458 It is mostly present in the regions of rough topography. The transfer
3459 to the internal wave domain (*upper right panel*) shows a very similar
3460 vertical distribution and is generally a factor of 10^{-6} times the energy
3461 itself. The energy transfer to (*lower left panel*) and from (*lower right*
3462 *panel*) the mean flow is lower and its vertical distribution more irregu-
3463 lar, and the correlation with the lee wave energy obviously lower. 98

LIST OF FIGURES

3464 6.3 The *upper left panel* shows the background internal wave energy at
3465 the transect along the Southern Ocean. The energy is in general more
3466 evenly distributed in the vertical than the lee wave energy, but is also
3467 lower than the lee wave energy is near the bottom. Regions of very
3468 large background internal wave energy correspond very well with re-
3469 gions of very high energy transfer from the lee wave field. The *upper*
3470 *right panel* shows the (square of the) buoyancy frequency, which ex-
3471 hibits a clear pycnocline and a minimum of $10^{-7} s^{-2}$ near 180° . The
3472 *lower left panel* shows the diffusivity, which is clearly increased in re-
3473 gions of very high internal wave energy and regions of very low buoy-
3474 ancancy frequency. The *lower right panel* show the dissipation rate of TKE,
3475 which is elevated to local maxima between $10^{-8} m^2/s^3$ and $10^{-7} m^2/s^3$
3476 in regions of high internal wave energy and high diffusivity. 100

3477 6.4 Over basically the entire cross section of Drake Passage at $68^\circ W$ lee
3478 wave energy (*upper left panel*) is present in the bottommost 1000m.
3479 The vertical profile of the transfer to the background internal wave en-
3480 ergy (*upper right panel*) is very similar to that of the lee wave energy.
3481 The transfer to the mean flow (*lower left panel*) can locally be as large
3482 as that to the internal wave field, but it mainly occurs in the bottom-
3483 most kilometer. The transfer from the mean flow to the lee wave field
3484 (*lower right panel*) can also have the same magnitude, occurs both
3485 near the bottom and in the interior. As such, large energy transfer from
3486 the mean flow significantly impacts the vertical profile of the lee wave
3487 field and subsequently the transfer to the internal wave field. 101

3488 6.5 The background internal wave energy (*upper left panel*) increases at
3489 all depths towards the north in the northern part of the cross section.
3490 This is mirrored by the buoyancy frequency (*upper right panel*). The
3491 diffusivity (*lower left panel*) is near the Munk value of $10^{-4} m^2/s$ in
3492 most of the southern half of the section. In the northern half it is in-
3493 creased in much of the interior and exhibit near bottom maxima close
3494 to $10^{-1} m^2/s$. Regions of increased internal wave energy and increased
3495 diffusivity also show a high dissipation rate of TKE (*lower right panel*),
3496 which reaches magnitudes of 10^{-8} in the interior. These regions co-
3497 incide very well with regions of large energy transfer from lee waves,
3498 highlighting the ability of the lee wave field to affect the diffusivity and
3499 dissipation of TKE. 102

3500 A.1 The pseudo-momentum flux at $37^\circ N$ for all four topography sensitiv-
3501 ity experiments. Even though the bottom stress varies substantially
3502 between the four experiment, the variation of the stress is remarkably
3503 similar throughout the experiments. 116

3504 A.2 The diffusivity at $37^\circ N$ for all four topography sensitivity experiments.
3505 In all experiments are the diffusivity in the interior of magnitude
3506 $10^{-4} m^2/s$ at many longitudes. 117

LIST OF FIGURES

3507	A.3	The difference (<i>upper panel</i>) and relative difference (<i>lower panel</i>) in	
3508		diffusivity between the base and control experiment at $37^{\circ}N$. Even	
3509		though the largest numerical differences are near the bottom, it is clear	
3510		how in the interior the diffusivity is increased by a factor of 10 or more	
3511		in the base experiment.	118

3512 **Bibliography**

- 3513 Aguilar, D. and Sutherland, B. (2006). Internal wave generation from rough topogra-
3514 phy. *Physics of Fluids*, 18(6):066603.
- 3515 Alford, M. H. (2001). Internal swell generation: The spatial distribution of energy flux
3516 from the wind to mixed layer near-inertial motions. *Journal of Physical Oceanog-*
3517 *raphy*, 31(8):2359–2368.
- 3518 Andrews, D. and McIntyre, M. E. (1976). Planetary waves in horizontal and vertical
3519 shear: The generalized Eliassen-Palm relation and the mean zonal acceleration.
3520 *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences*, 33(11):2031–2048.
- 3521 Arakawa, A. and Lamb, V. R. (1977). Computational design of the basic dynamical
3522 processes of the UCLA general circulation model. *General circulation models of the*
3523 *atmosphere*, 17(Supplement C):173–265.
- 3524 Bell, T. (1975). Topographically generated internal waves in the open ocean. *Journal*
3525 *of Geophysical Research*, 80(3):320–327.
- 3526 Boyd, J. P. (1976). The noninteraction of waves with the zonally averaged flow on
3527 a spherical earth and the interrelationships on eddy fluxes of energy, heat and
3528 momentum. *Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences*, 33(12):2285–2291.
- 3529 Brearley, J. A., Sheen, K. L., Naveira Garabato, A. C., Smeed, D. A., and Waterman, S.
3530 (2013). Eddy-induced modulation of turbulent dissipation over rough topography
3531 in the southern ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 43(11):2288–2308.
- 3532 Bryan, K. and Lewis, L. (1979). A water mass model of the world ocean. *Journal of*
3533 *Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 84(C5):2503–2517.
- 3534 Cacchione, D., Pratson, L. F., and Ogston, A. (2002). The shaping of continental
3535 slopes by internal tides. *Science*, 296(5568):724–727.
- 3536 Cairns, J. L. and Williams, G. O. (1976). Internal wave observations from a midwater
3537 float, 2. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 81(12):1943–1950.
- 3538 Cummins, P. F., Holloway, G., and Gargett, E. (1990). Sensitivity of the GFDL ocean
3539 general circulation model to a parameterization of vertical diffusion. *Journal of*
3540 *Physical Oceanography*, 20(6):817–830.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3541 Cusack, J. M., Naveira Garabato, A. C., Smeed, D. A., and Girton, J. B. (2017). Obser-
3542 vation of a large lee wave in the drake passage. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
3543 47(4):793–810.
- 3544 Danabasoglu, G., Yeager, S. G., Bailey, D., Behrens, E., Bentsen, M., Bi, D., Biastoch,
3545 A., Böning, C., Bozec, A., Canuto, V. M., et al. (2014). North atlantic simulations
3546 in coordinated ocean-ice reference experiments phase ii (core-ii). part i: mean
3547 states. *Ocean Modelling*, 73:76–107.
- 3548 D’Asaro, E. A. (1985). The energy flux from the wind to near-inertial motions in the
3549 surface mixed layer. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 15(8):1043–1059.
- 3550 De Lavergne, C., Madec, G., Le Sommer, J., Nurser, A. G., and Naveira Garabato, A. C.
3551 (2016). The impact of a variable mixing efficiency on the abyssal overturning.
3552 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 46(2):663–681.
- 3553 Eden, C. and Greatbatch, R. J. (2008). Towards a mesoscale eddy closure. *Ocean*
3554 *Modelling*, 20(3):223–239.
- 3555 Eden, C. and Olbers, D. (2014). An energy compartment model for propagation,
3556 nonlinear interaction, and dissipation of internal gravity waves. *Journal of Physi-*
3557 *cal Oceanography*, 44(8):2093–2106.
- 3558 Eden, C. and Olbers, D. (2017). A closure for internal wave–mean flow interaction.
3559 part ii: Wave drag. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 47(6):1403–1412.
- 3560 Eden, C., Pollmann, F., and Olbers, D. (2019). Numerical evaluation of energy trans-
3561 fers in internal gravity wave spectra of the ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanogra-*
3562 *phy*, 49(3):737–749.
- 3563 Ferrari, R. and Wunsch, C. (2009). Ocean circulation kinetic energy: Reservoirs,
3564 sources, and sinks. *Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics*, 41.
- 3565 Garner, S. T. (2005). A topographic drag closure built on an analytical base flux.
3566 *Journal of Atmospheric Sciences*, 62(7):2302–2315.
- 3567 Garrett, C. and Munk, W. (1972). Space-time scales of internal waves. *Geophysical &*
3568 *Astrophysical Fluid Dynamics*, 3(1):225–264.
- 3569 Garrett, C. and Munk, W. (1975). Space-time scales of internal waves: A progress
3570 report. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 80(3):291–297.
- 3571 Gaspar, P., Grégoris, Y., and Lefevre, J.-M. (1990). A simple eddy kinetic energy model
3572 for simulations of the oceanic vertical mixing: Tests at station papa and long-term
3573 upper ocean study site. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 95(C9):16179–
3574 16193.
- 3575 Gent, P. R. and McWilliams, J. C. (1990). Isopycnal mixing in ocean circulation mod-
3576 els. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 20(1):150–155.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3577 Gill, A. (1984). On the behavior of internal waves in the wakes of storms. *Journal of*
3578 *Physical Oceanography*, 14(7):1129–1151.
- 3579 Goff, J. A. (2010). Global prediction of abyssal hill root-mean-square heights from
3580 small-scale altimetric gravity variability. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid*
3581 *Earth*, 115(B12).
- 3582 Goff, J. A. and Arbic, B. K. (2010). Global prediction of abyssal hill roughness statistics
3583 for use in ocean models from digital maps of paleo-spreading rate, paleo-ridge
3584 orientation, and sediment thickness. *Ocean Modelling*, 32(1-2):36–43.
- 3585 Goff, J. A. and Jordan, T. H. (1988). Stochastic Modeling of Seafloor Morphology:
3586 Inversion of Sea Beam Data for Second-Order Statistics. *Journal of Geophysical*
3587 *Research: Solid Earth*, 93(B11):13589–13608.
- 3588 Hall, M. M. and Bryden, H. L. (1982). Direct estimates and mechanisms of ocean heat
3589 transport. *Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers*, 29(3):339–
3590 359.
- 3591 Hallberg, R. (2013). Using a resolution function to regulate parameterizations of
3592 oceanic mesoscale eddy effects. *Ocean Modelling*, 72:92–103.
- 3593 Hasselmann, K. (1967). Weak-interaction theory of ocean waves. *Schriftenreihe*
3594 *Schiffbau*.
- 3595 Henyey, F. S., Wright, J., and Flatté, S. M. (1986). Energy and action flow through
3596 the internal wave field: An eikonal approach. *Journal of Geophysical Research:*
3597 *Oceans*, 91(C7):8487–8495.
- 3598 Hogan, P. J. and Hurlburt, H. E. (2000). Impact of upper ocean–topographical cou-
3599 pling and isopycnal outcropping in japan/east sea models with 1/8 to 1/64 reso-
3600 lution. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 30(10):2535–2561.
- 3601 Jayne, S. R. (2009). The impact of abyssal mixing parameterizations in an ocean
3602 general circulation model. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 39(7):1756–1775.
- 3603 Jayne, S. R. and St. Laurent, L. C. (2001). Parameterizing tidal dissipation over rough
3604 topography. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 28(5):811–814.
- 3605 Jiang, J., Lu, Y., and Perrie, W. (2005). Estimating the energy flux from the wind to
3606 ocean inertial motions: The sensitivity to surface wind fields. *Geophysical research*
3607 *letters*, 32(15).
- 3608 Jochum, M. and Eden, C. (2015). The connection between southern ocean winds,
3609 the atlantic meridional overturning circulation, and indo-pacific upwelling. *Jour-*
3610 *nal of Climate*, 28(23):9250–9257.
- 3611 Johnson, G. C. and Bryden, H. L. (1989). On the size of the antarctic circumpolar
3612 current. *Deep Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers*, 36(1):39–53.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3613 Klymak, J. M. (2018). Nonpropagating form drag and turbulence due to stratified
3614 flow over large-scale abyssal hill topography. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
3615 48(10):2383–2395.
- 3616 Köhler, J., Mertens, C., Walter, M., Stöber, U., Rhein, M., and Kanzow, T. (2014). Vari-
3617 ability in the internal wave field induced by the atlantic deep western boundary
3618 current at 16° n. *Journal of physical oceanography*, 44(2):492–516.
- 3619 Koszalka, I. M., Haine, T. W., and Magaldi, M. G. (2017). Mesoscale mixing of the
3620 denmark strait overflow in the irmingier basin. *Ocean Modelling*, 112:90–98.
- 3621 Kuhlbrodt, T., Griesel, A., Montoya, M., Levermann, A., Hofmann, M., and Rahm-
3622 storf, S. (2007). On the driving processes of the atlantic meridional overturning
3623 circulation. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 45(2).
- 3624 Kunze, E. and Smith, S. L. (2004). The role of small-scale topography in turbulent
3625 mixing of the global ocean. *Oceanography*, 17(1):55–64.
- 3626 Ledwell, J., Montgomery, E., Polzin, K., Laurent, L. S., Schmitt, R., and Toole, J.
3627 (2000). Evidence for enhanced mixing over rough topography in the abyssal
3628 ocean. *Nature*, 403(6766):179–182.
- 3629 Ledwell, J. R., Watson, A. J., and Law, C. S. (1993). Evidence for slow mixing
3630 across the pycnocline from an open-ocean tracer-release experiment. *Nature*,
3631 364(6439):701–703.
- 3632 Ledwell, J. R., Watson, A. J., and Law, C. S. (1998). Mixing of a tracer in the pycnocline.
3633 *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 103(C10):21499–21529.
- 3634 Legg, S. (2021). Mixing by oceanic lee waves. *Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics*,
3635 53:173–201.
- 3636 Legg, S., Briegleb, B., Chang, Y., Chassignet, E. P., Danabasoglu, G., Ezer, T., Gordon,
3637 A. L., Griffies, S., Hallberg, R., Jackson, L., et al. (2009). Improving oceanic over-
3638 flow representation in climate models: the gravity current entrainment climate
3639 process team. *Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society*, 90(5):657–670.
- 3640 Leichter, J. J., Stewart, H. L., and Miller, S. L. (2003). Episodic nutrient transport to
3641 florida coral reefs. *Limnology and Oceanography*, 48(4):1394–1407.
- 3642 Lvov, Y. V. and Tabak, E. G. (2001). Hamiltonian formalism and the garrett-munk
3643 spectrum of internal waves in the ocean. *Physical review letters*, 87(16):168501.
- 3644 MacKinnon, J. (2013). Mountain waves in the deep ocean. *Nature*, 501(7467):321–
3645 322.
- 3646 MacKinnon, J., Alford, M. H., Sun, O., Pinkel, R., Zhao, Z., and Klymak, J. (2013).
3647 Parametric subharmonic instability of the internal tide at 29 n. *Journal of Physical
3648 Oceanography*, 43(1):17–28.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3649 MacKinnon, J. A., Zhao, Z., Whalen, C. B., Waterhouse, A. F., Trossman, D. S., Sun,
3650 O. M., St. Laurent, L. C., Simmons, H. L., Polzin, K., Pinkel, R., et al. (2017). Climate
3651 process team on internal wave-driven ocean mixing. *Bulletin of the American*
3652 *Meteorological Society*, 98(11):2429–2454.
- 3653 Marshall, D. P. and Adcroft, A. J. (2010). Parameterization of ocean eddies: Potential
3654 vorticity mixing, energetics and arnold’s first stability theorem. *Ocean Modelling*,
3655 32(3-4):188–204.
- 3656 Marshall, D. P. and Naveira Garabato, A. C. (2008). A conjecture on the role of
3657 bottom-enhanced diapycnal mixing in the parameterization of geostrophic ed-
3658 dies. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 38(7):1607–1613.
- 3659 McComas, C. (1977). Equilibrium mechanisms within the oceanic internal wave
3660 field. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 7(6):836–845.
- 3661 McComas, C. H. and Bretherton, F. P. (1977). Resonant interaction of oceanic internal
3662 waves. *Journal of Geophysical Research*, 82(9):1397–1412.
- 3663 McComas, C. H. and Müller, P. (1981). Time scales of resonant interactions among
3664 oceanic internal waves. *Journal of physical oceanography*, 11(2):139–147.
- 3665 McDougall, T. J. (2003). Potential enthalpy: A conservative oceanic variable for eval-
3666 uating heat content and heat fluxes. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 33(5):945–
3667 963.
- 3668 Melet, A., Hallberg, R., Adcroft, A., Nikurashin, M., and Legg, S. (2015). Energy flux
3669 into internal lee waves: Sensitivity to future climate changes using linear theory
3670 and a climate model. *Journal of Climate*, 28(6):2365–2384.
- 3671 Melet, A., Hallberg, R., Legg, S., and Nikurashin, M. (2014). Sensitivity of the ocean
3672 state to lee wave-driven mixing. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 44(3):900–921.
- 3673 Meyer, A., Polzin, K. L., Sloyan, B. M., and Phillips, H. E. (2015a). Internal waves and
3674 mixing near the kerguelen plateau. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 46(2):417–
3675 437.
- 3676 Meyer, A., Sloyan, B. M., Polzin, K. L., Phillips, H. E., and Bindoff, N. L. (2015b).
3677 Mixing variability in the southern ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
3678 45(4):966–987.
- 3679 Müller, P. and Natarov, A. (2003). The internal wave action model (iwam). In *Proceed-*
3680 *ings, Aha Huliko’a Hawaiian Winter Workshop, School of Ocean and Earth Science*
3681 *and Technology, Special Publication*, pages 95–105. Citeseer.
- 3682 Munday, D. R., Johnson, H. L., and Marshall, D. P. (2013). Eddy saturation of equili-
3683 brated circumpolar currents. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 43(3):507–532.
- 3684 Munk, W. and Wunsch, C. (1998). Abyssal recipes ii: Energetics of tidal and wind
3685 mixing. *Deep-sea research. Part I, Oceanographic research papers*, 45(12):1977–
3686 2010.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3687 Munk, W. H. (1966). Abyssal recipes. *Deep Sea Research and Oceanographic Ab-*
3688 *stracts*, 13(4):707 – 730.
- 3689 Naveira Garabato, A. C., Polzin, K. L., King, B. A., Heywood, K. J., and Visbeck, M.
3690 (2004). Widespread intense turbulent mixing in the southern ocean. *Science*,
3691 303(5655):210–213.
- 3692 Nikurashin, M. and Ferrari, R. (2010a). Radiation and dissipation of internal waves
3693 generated by geostrophic motions impinging on small-scale topography: Appli-
3694 cation to the southern ocean. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 40(9):2025–2042.
- 3695 Nikurashin, M. and Ferrari, R. (2010b). Radiation and dissipation of internal waves
3696 generated by geostrophic motions impinging on small-scale topography: Theory.
3697 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 40(5):1055–1074.
- 3698 Nikurashin, M. and Ferrari, R. (2011). Global energy conversion rate from
3699 geostrophic flows into internal lee waves in the deep ocean. *Geophysical Research*
3700 *Letters*, 38(8).
- 3701 Nikurashin, M. and Ferrari, R. (2013). Overturning circulation driven by breaking
3702 internal waves in the deep ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 40(12):3133–3137.
- 3703 Nikurashin, M., Vallis, G. K., and Adcroft, A. (2013). Routes to energy dissipation for
3704 geostrophic flows in the southern ocean. *Nature Geoscience*, 6(1):48–51.
- 3705 Nycander, J. (2005). Generation of internal waves in the deep ocean by tides. *Journal*
3706 *of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 110(C10).
- 3707 Nycander, J. (2011). Energy conversion, mixing energy, and neutral surfaces with a
3708 nonlinear equation of state. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 41(1):28–41.
- 3709 Oakey, N. (1982). Determination of the rate of dissipation of turbulent energy
3710 from simultaneous temperature and velocity shear microstructure measure-
3711 ments. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 12(3):256–271.
- 3712 Olbers, D. and Eden, C. (2013). A global model for the diapycnal diffusivity induced
3713 by internal gravity waves. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 43(8):1759–1779.
- 3714 Olbers, D. and Eden, C. (2017). A closure for internal wave–mean flow interaction.
3715 part i: Energy conversion. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 47(6):1389–1401.
- 3716 Olbers, D., Willebrand, J., and Eden, C. (2012). *Ocean dynamics*. Springer Science &
3717 Business Media.
- 3718 Olbers, D. J. (1976). Nonlinear energy transfer and the energy balance of the internal
3719 wave field in the deep ocean. *Journal of Fluid mechanics*, 74(2):375–399.
- 3720 Osborn, T. R. and Cox, C. S. (1972). Oceanic fine structure. *Geophysical & Astrophys-*
3721 *ical Fluid Dynamics*, 3(1):321–345.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3722 Palmer, T., Shutts, G., and Swinbank, R. (1986). Alleviation of a systematic westerly
3723 bias in general circulation and numerical weather prediction models through an
3724 orographic gravity wave drag parametrization. *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Me-*
3725 *teorological Society*, 112(474):1001–1039.
- 3726 Pedlosky, J. (2013). *Ocean circulation theory*. Springer Science & Business Media.
- 3727 Pollmann, F. (2020). Global characterization of the ocean's internal wave spectrum.
3728 *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 50(7):1871–1891.
- 3729 Pollmann, F., Eden, C., and Olbers, D. (2017). Evaluating the global internal wave
3730 model idemix using finestructure methods. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*,
3731 47(9):2267–2289.
- 3732 Polzin, K., Toole, J., Ledwell, J., and Schmitt, R. (1997). Spatial variability of turbulent
3733 mixing in the abyssal ocean. *Science*, 276(5309):93–96.
- 3734 Polzin, K. L. and Lvov, Y. V. (2011). Toward regional characterizations of the oceanic
3735 internal wavefield. *Reviews of geophysics*, 49(4).
- 3736 Polzin, K. L., Toole, J. M., and Schmitt, R. W. (1995). Finescale parameterizations of
3737 turbulent dissipation. *Journal of physical oceanography*, 25(3):306–328.
- 3738 Richardson, L. F. (1920). The supply of energy from and to atmospheric eddies. *Pro-*
3739 *ceedings of the Royal Society of London. Series A, Containing Papers of a Mathe-*
3740 *matical and Physical Character*, 97(686):354–373.
- 3741 Rimac, A., Von Storch, J.-S., and Eden, C. (2016). The total energy flux leaving the
3742 ocean's mixed layer. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 46(6):1885–1900.
- 3743 Rimac, A., von Storch, J.-S., Eden, C., and Haak, H. (2013). The influence of high-
3744 resolution wind stress field on the power input to near-inertial motions in the
3745 ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 40(18):4882–4886.
- 3746 Rintoul, S. R. and Garabato, A. C. N. (2013). Dynamics of the southern ocean circu-
3747 lation. In *International Geophysics*, volume 103, pages 471–492. Elsevier.
- 3748 Russell, J. L., Dixon, K. W., Gnanadesikan, A., Stouffer, R. J., and Toggweiler, J. (2006).
3749 The southern hemisphere westerlies in a warming world: Propping open the door
3750 to the deep ocean. *Journal of Climate*, 19(24):6382–6390.
- 3751 Sarkar, S. and Scotti, A. (2017). From topographic internal gravity waves to turbu-
3752 lence. *Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics*, 49:195–220.
- 3753 Scott, R., Goff, J., Naveira Garabato, A., and Nurser, A. (2011). Global rate and spec-
3754 tral characteristics of internal gravity wave generation by geostrophic flow over
3755 topography. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 116(C9).

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3756 Sheen, K., Brearley, J., Naveira Garabato, A. C., Smeed, D., Waterman, S., Ledwell,
3757 J. R., Meredith, M. P., St. Laurent, L., Thurnherr, A. M., Toole, J. M., et al. (2013).
3758 Rates and mechanisms of turbulent dissipation and mixing in the southern ocean:
3759 Results from the diapycnal and isopycnal mixing experiment in the southern
3760 ocean (dimes). *Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans*, 118(6):2774–2792.
- 3761 Smith, R. B. (1989). Mountain-induced stagnation points in hydrostatic flow. *Tellus*
3762 *A: Dynamic Meteorology and Oceanography*, 41(3):270–274.
- 3763 Smyth, W., Moum, J., and Caldwell, D. (2001). The efficiency of mixing in turbu-
3764 lent patches: Inferences from direct simulations and microstructure observa-
3765 tions. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 31(8):1969–1992.
- 3766 St. Laurent, L., Naveira Garabato, A. C., Ledwell, J. R., Thurnherr, A. M., Toole, J. M.,
3767 and Watson, A. J. (2012). Turbulence and diapycnal mixing in drake passage. *Jour-
3768 nal of Physical Oceanography*, 42(12):2143–2152.
- 3769 Stommel, H. (1961). Thermohaline convection with two stable regimes of flow. *Tel-
3770 lus*, 13(2):224–230.
- 3771 Talley, L. D. (2013). Closure of the global overturning circulation through the in-
3772 dian, pacific, and southern oceans: Schematics and transports. *Oceanography*,
3773 26(1):80–97.
- 3774 Teixeira, M. A. (2014). The physics of orographic gravity wave drag. *Frontiers in*
3775 *Physics*, 2:43.
- 3776 Toggweiler, J. (2009). Shifting westerlies. *Science*, 323(5920):1434–1435.
- 3777 Toggweiler, J. and Key, R. (2003). Ocean circulation| thermohaline circulation. ency-
3778 clopedia of atmospheric sciences, 1549–1555.
- 3779 Toggweiler, J. and Samuels, B. (1995). Effect of drake passage on the global ther-
3780 mohaline circulation. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers*,
3781 42(4):477–500.
- 3782 Trossman, D. S., Arbic, B. K., Garner, S. T., Goff, J. A., Jayne, S. R., Metzger, E. J., and
3783 Wallcraft, A. J. (2013). Impact of parameterized lee wave drag on the energy budget
3784 of an eddying global ocean model. *Ocean Modelling*, 72:119–142.
- 3785 Watanabe, M. and Hibiya, T. (2002). Global estimates of the wind-induced energy
3786 flux to inertial motions in the surface mixed layer. *Geophysical research letters*,
3787 29(8):64–1.
- 3788 Waterman, S., Naveira Garabato, A. C., and Polzin, K. L. (2013). Internal waves and
3789 turbulence in the antarctic circumpolar current. *Journal of Physical Oceanogra-
3790 phy*, 43(2):259–282.
- 3791 Waterman, S., Polzin, K. L., Naveira Garabato, A. C., Sheen, K. L., and Forryan, A.
3792 (2014). Suppression of internal wave breaking in the antarctic circumpolar cur-
3793 rent near topography. *Journal of Physical Oceanography*, 44(5):1466–1492.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- 3794 Whittaker, J. M., Goncharov, A., Williams, S. E., Müller, R. D., and Leitchenkov, G.
3795 (2013). Global sediment thickness data set updated for the australian-antarctic
3796 southern ocean. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems*, 14(8):3297–3305.
- 3797 Wong, S. H., Santoro, A. E., Nidzieko, N. J., Hench, J. L., and Boehm, A. B. (2012).
3798 Coupled physical, chemical, and microbiological measurements suggest a con-
3799 nection between internal waves and surf zone water quality in the southern cali-
3800 fornia bight. *Continental Shelf Research*, 34:64–78.
- 3801 Wright, C. J., Scott, R. B., Ailliot, P., and Furnival, D. (2014). Lee wave generation rates
3802 in the deep ocean. *Geophysical Research Letters*, 41(7):2434–2440.
- 3803 Wunsch, C. (1975). Internal tides in the ocean. *Reviews of Geophysics*, 13(1):167–182.
- 3804 Wunsch, C. and Ferrari, R. (2004). Vertical mixing, energy, and the general circula-
3805 tion of the oceans. *Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics*, 36(1):281–314.
- 3806 Yang, L., Nikurashin, M., Hogg, A. M., and Sloyan, B. M. (2018). Energy loss from
3807 transient eddies due to lee wave generation in the southern ocean. *Journal of*
3808 *Physical Oceanography*, 48(12):2867–2885.
- 3809 Young, W. R. (2010). Dynamic enthalpy, conservative temperature, and the seawater
3810 boussinesq approximation. *Journal of physical oceanography*, 40(2):394–400.